

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA  
ARCHÆOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

---

ACCESSION NO. 23454

CALL No. 491.375/Dur

D.G.A. 79

A

# PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

# PĀLI LANGUAGE.

BY

CHARLES DUROISELLE,

SUPERINTENDENT, ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY, BURMA.

~~2323~~ 23454  
184/32  
THIRD EDITION.

491.375

Dwr

RANGOON :

PRINTED AT THE BRITISH BURMA PRESS.

1921.





## PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

---

THIS third preface to my grammar does not require any more comment than is already found in the two previous prefaces. That it should have to go through a third impression shews that it has at least fulfilled the object for which it was written, that is, to help the students in the colleges in Burma to obtain a firm grasp of the principles of Pali grammar. The sphere of its usefulness seems to have somewhat broadened, for it is now used to a certain extent in England, America and even Japan.

My best thanks are due to Maung Hla,<sup>1</sup> B. A., my old pupil in Pali and epigraphy, for his kindly and thorough reading of a<sup>1</sup> second proof.

CHAS. DUROISELLE.

MANDALAY :

2nd February 1921.





CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 23454

Date 5. 4. 56.

Call No. 491. 375 / Dur

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

---

THIS grammar was written at a time when it was urgently needed for schools and colleges, and as a consequence was conceived, written and seen through the press within the short space of a little over three months. Notwithstanding a few errors which had crept in—and which have now been corrected—the favour with which this work was received and reviewed in Europe, exceeded the author's expectations, if indeed he had any. Such favourable criticism it did not find in India; its great defect in the opinion of some Indian gentlemen being two-fold; it does not enough adhere to the very ancient Hindu system of grammatical exposition; this venerable system was, it is readily recognized by every scholar, the most suitable—in fact the only suitable system for the method of imparting knowledge current in the times in which the earliest Sanskrit grammars and, modelled on them, the first Pāli grammars were composed. But, other times, other methods; and I am not alone in thinking that the old Hindu system, whatever its undeniable merits, could not be with success adapted to the clearer, more rapid and rational Western methods of teaching. But the more unpardonable departure from the beaten track is, the author has not thought it necessary constantly to refer to the Sanskrit forms and with them compare and from them deduce the Pāli ones. It must be remembered that this comparative method, however excellent and useful to persons already

acquainted with Sanskrit who desire to take up the study of Pāli, does not answer in a practical manner to the needs of the class of students for whom this book has been written; that is, young students totally ignorant of the first principles of Sanskrit, and who do not, for the most part, in the least intend taking up such study. Moreover, to those who may later on, take up such a course, the close relation between the two languages will become easily apparent.

On page 314, mention is made of "a so-called Nominative Absolute;" it is explained in a Pāli work called the *Niruttidīpani*, printed in Rangoon. M. Monier Williams also mentions it in the preface to his Sanskrit Grammar.

Much official and literary work in connection with other duties did not allow me to see this second edition through the press. Professor Maung Tin, of the Rangoon College, has most graciously undertaken this onerous work, and he has read and corrected every single proof. Persons who have had experience in proof-reading, above all of a book of such a character as the present one, will readily understand the magnitude of the service done me by my old pupil, and for which I beg here to thank him most sincerely.

CHAS. DUROISELLE.

MANDALAY :  
9th March 1915. }

## PREFACE.

---

THIS grammar was written for my pupils in the Rangoon College, to facilitate their work and make the study of the Pāli language easier for them. There is, to my knowledge, no Pāli grammar suited to the requirements of students *who do not know even the elements of Sanskrit*, and to place into their hands grammars such as that of Muller, of Frankfurter and of Minayef, which are intended for Sanskrit dilettanti, would serve rather to puzzle than to help them; moreover, these grammars are not quite complete, consisting merely of the inflections of nouns and verbs. Mr. James Gray's grammar, which was written with the same purpose as the one now presented to the public, has long been out of stock; it had two drawbacks; the Pāli was all in Burmese characters, and it was too elementary to help the student in acquiring a thorough mastery of the language.

It is, I think, the first time, that Derivation has been treated systematically and fully in a European work; the chapter on Syntax, too, though not quite exhaustive (to make it so would require a special volume) is a novel feature, considering that Syntax has never as yet been treated of, except in one single instance,\* and very briefly, and with no examples whatever given in illustration of the rules.

One of the greatest difficulties experienced has been to explain some forms (principally in Assimilation and Verbs), without the help of Sanskrit; scholars well understand how Pāli forms, thus explained, seem arbi-

\* *Pāli Grammar by H. H. Tilby, Rangoon Baptist College, 1899*

trary, not to say incomprehensible in some cases; so that, although my avowed object was to write for students who do not know the first elements of Sanskrit grammar, I have thought it advisable to scatter here and there, in foot-notes or in the body of the work, a few explanations bearing on Sanskrit grammar, to make some forms better understood. But the student is perfectly free to skip them over and to assume the Pāli forms just as they are given; I would however recommend him to peruse them at a second reading.

Each rule, throughout, is profusely illustrated with examples taken from the Jātakas and from other books, and indigenous Pāli grammars. The paragraphs have been numbered and, to facilitate reference in looking up the rules, they are quoted whenever necessary, to render more easy the study of that part of the grammar which the student is actually reading.

Grammatical discoveries are not to be expected; but scholars will find in the work now issued, a few things which have never before appeared in European grammars of Pāli.

The following indigenous Pāli grammars have been consulted :

Saddanīti.  
Mahārūpasiddhī.  
Mahārūpasiddhi tīkā.  
Akhyātapadamālā.  
Moggallāna.  
Kacchāyana.  
Gaṇon Pyan.

I have availed myself of all the grammars published in Europe to which I could have access.

RANGOON : } CHAS. DUROISELLE.  
20th December 1906. }

## ABBREVIATIONS.

---

Masc.	Masculine.
Fem.	Feminine.
Neut.	Neuter.
S., Sansk.	Sanskrit. •
P. P. P.	Passive Perfect Participle.
P. P. A.	Perfect Participle Active.
F. P. P.	Future Passive Participle.
Adj.	Adjective.
Nom.	Nominative.
Gen.	Genitive.
Dat.	Dative.
Acc.	Accusative.
Inst.	Instrumentive.
Abl.	Ablative.
Loc.	Locative.



LIBRARY

1. 1. 1.	1. 1. 1.
2. 2. 2.	2. 2. 2.
3. 3. 3.	3. 3. 3.
4. 4. 4.	4. 4. 4.
5. 5. 5.	5. 5. 5.
6. 6. 6.	6. 6. 6.
7. 7. 7.	7. 7. 7.
8. 8. 8.	8. 8. 8.
9. 9. 9.	9. 9. 9.
10. 10. 10.	10. 10. 10.
11. 11. 11.	11. 11. 11.
12. 12. 12.	12. 12. 12.
13. 13. 13.	13. 13. 13.
14. 14. 14.	14. 14. 14.
15. 15. 15.	15. 15. 15.
16. 16. 16.	16. 16. 16.
17. 17. 17.	17. 17. 17.
18. 18. 18.	18. 18. 18.
19. 19. 19.	19. 19. 19.
20. 20. 20.	20. 20. 20.

# CONTENTS.

(*The numbers within brackets refer to the paragraphs.*)

Chapter.	Page.
----------	-------

## PREFACE.

I, THE ALPHABET .....	1—5
-----------------------	-----

Vowels short and long (2—5); The letters classified (6); Pronunciation (10—11); Conjunct consonants (12—13).

II SANDHI—EUPHONY .....	5—21
-------------------------	------

Introductory (14—16); Vowel Sandhi (17—27); Consonantal Insertions (28); Consonantal Sandhi (29—36); Nigghahita Sandhi (37—46); Interchange of letters (47); Signs (48—50).

III ASSIMILATION .....	22—33
------------------------	-------

Introductory (51—52); Kinds of Assimilation (53); General Rules (54—66); Assimilation of *Nasals* (67—69); Assimilation of *y* (70—79); Assimilation of *r* (80—84); Assimilation of *s* (85—95); Assimilation of *h* (96—102).

IV, STRENGTHENING .....	33—36
-------------------------	-------

V DECLENSION OF NOMINAL BASES .....	36—76
-------------------------------------	-------

Stem or Base (116*b*); Gender (116*c*, *d*); The Cases (116—*f*); Divisions of Declension (117); General Case-

## Chapter.

## Page.

ending (118); Vowel declension, stems in **a** (119—121); Masculines in **a**, *dera* (122); Neuters in **a**, *rūpa* (123—124); Declension of nouns in **ā** (125); Feminines in **a**, *kaññā* (126—127); Masculines in **ā**, *sā* (128); Declension of nouns in **i** (129); Masculines in **i**, *kapi* (130—131); Feminines in **i**, *ratti* (132—133); Neuters in **i**, *vāri* (134); Declension of nouns in **i** (135); Masculines in **i**, *daṇḍi* (136—137); Feminines in **i**, *nadī* (138—139); Declension of nouns in **u** (140); Masculines in **u**, *bhikkhu* (141); Feminines in **u**, *dhenu* (142—143); Neuters in **u**, *cakkhu* (144—145); Declension of nouns in **ū** (146); Masculines in **ū**, *sayambhū* (147); Feminines in **ū**, *vadhū* (148); Diphthongal stems (149); Special nouns, *go*, *sakhā* (150—151); Consonantal Declension (152); *attā* (154); *brahmā* (155); *rājā* (156); *pumā* (157); Stems in **o**, *mano* (159—160); *āyu* (161); Stems in **o**, *satthā* (163); *mātā*, *pita* (164); Stems in **at**, **vat**, **mat**, *bhavaṃ* (166); *arahaṃ* (167).

## VI FORMATION OF FEMININE BASES ..... 77—83

Feminine suffixes (181); Feminine bases of Substantives (182—192); Feminine bases of Adjectives (193—195).

## VII ADJECTIVES ..... 83—104

Adjectives in **a** (197—201); Adjectives in **i** (202—204); Adjectives in **i** (205

<i>Chapter.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
—210); Adjectives in <b>u</b> (211—214); Adjectives in <b>ū</b> (215—218); Adjectives with consonantal bases (220—224); <i>mahā</i> (226); <i>dhīmā</i> (228); <i>gunāvā</i> (230); Adjectives in <b>vi</b> (231—235); Negative Adjectives (236—237); Comparison (238—247); Irregular Adjectives (247).	
VIII NUMERALS	106—117
Table of Cardinals and Ordinals (251); Cardinals (252—272); Ordinals (273—278); Adverbial Derivatives from numerals (279—287).	
IX PRONOUNS, PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES AND PRONOMINAL DERIVATIVES	118—139
Personal (288—296); Demonstratives (297—310); Relatives (311—314); Interrogative (315—318); Indefinite (319—327); Other pronouns (328—335); Pronominal Derivatives (336—352); Adjectives declined pronominally (353).	
X VERBS	140—238
Introductory (354—368); Primitive Verbs (369); First Conjugation (370—372); Rules of reduplication (372); Second Conjugation (373); Third Conjugation (374—375); Fourth Conjugation (376); Fifth Conjugation (377); Sixth Conjugation (378); Seventh Conjugation (379); Conjugation of the Present System (381—404);	

## Chapter.

## Page.

Irregular Verbs (p. 167); Aorist (405—426) System of the Perfect (427—430); Future System (431—438); Participles: Present (439—448); Future (449); P.P.P. (450—464); P.P.A. (465); F.P.P. (466—469); Gerund (470—472); Infinitive (473—477); Passive Voice (481—490); Causative Verbs (491—497); Denominative Verbs (498—502); Desiderative Verbs (503—507); Intensive Verbs (508—509); Defective and Anomalous Verbs (510—513); Verbal prefixes (514—522); Paradigm of a Verb fully conjugated: *pacati* (523); *coreti* (524—527); Table of the changes occurring in the root (528).

# XI INDECLINABLES ..... 239—244

Derivative Adverbs (531); Case-form-Adverbs (532); Pure Adverbs (p. 241); Prepositions (533—537); Conjunctions (538).

# XII COMPOUNDS ..... 244—269

Introductory (539—541); Dvanda (542—544); Tappurisa (545); Kammadhāraya (546); Nouns in apposition (547); Digu (548); Adverbial Compounds (549); Relative Compounds (550—551); Upapada Compounds (552); Anomalous Compounds (553); Complex Compounds (554); Changes in certain words in Compounds (555); Verbal Compounds (556—557).

<i>Chapler.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
XIII DERIVATION	270—297
Introductory (558—574); Primary derivatives, <i>Kita</i> (575—578); Secondary derivation, <i>Taddhita</i> (579—581); kvi suffixes (582—584).	
XIV SYNTAX	297—331
Kāraka (587); Order of Sentences (588); Article (589); Concord (590—592); Nominative (594); Genitive (595); Dative (597); Accusative (598); Instrumentive (599); Ablative (600); Locative (601); Vocative (602); Genitive and Locative Absolute (603); of Adjectives (604); of Pronouns (605—609); Repetition (610); of Verbs (611—618); of Participles (619—622); of Indeclinables (623); Direct and Indirect Narration (624); Interrogation and Negation (625).	
XV PROSODY	331
Introductory (626—627); Feet (628—629); Short and long Syllables (630); Varieties of metres (631); Sama class (632); Addhasama class (634); Visama class (635); Vatta (636); Kinds of Vatta (638); Jāti (639—641); Vetāliya (642).	



# A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

## OF THE

# PĀLI LANGUAGE.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### THE ALPHABET.

1. The Pāli Alphabet consist of 41 letters; namely: 6 vowels, 2 diphthongs, 32 consonants, and one accessory nasal sound called *Niggahīta*.

2. The vowels are divided into *short* and *long*; the short vowels are: a, i, u; the long vowels are ā, ī, ū.

3. The value of a long vowel is about twice that of a short one, so that it takes twice as much time to pronounce a long vowel as to pronounce a short one.

4. The sign of a long vowel is a dash placed over it. Besides the above three long vowels, all short vowels are *prosodically long* that come before a conjunct or double consonant: for instance in, bhikkhu, raṭṭha and puppha, the—i before kkh, the—a, before tth and the—u, before pph are said to be long.

Long also are a, i, u when followed by th, (*niggahīta*) as in: puppham, a flower; cakkhum eye; kappim, monkey.

5. The two diphthongs are e and o, which are always long. They are diphthongs *only grammatically*, because they are supposed to be the product of the meeting and contraction of two vowels (a + i = e; and a + u = o). In reality and practically they are simple vowels.

6. The consonants are divided into: 25 mutes, 5 semi-vowels, one sibilant and one aspirate (spirant).



The 25 mutes are divided, according to the place of their formation and utterance, into five groups of five letters each.

The following table shows at a glance the classification of all the letters:—

### CONSONANTS.

#### MUTES.

	Surd.		Sonants.						Vowels.	
	Unaspirate.	Aspirate.	Unaspirate.	Aspirate.	Nasals.	SEMI-VOWELS.		Spirant.	Sibilant.	
						Liquids.	Vowels.			
Gutturals	k	kh	g	gh	ṅ		a, ā	h		
Palatals	c	ch	j	jh	ñ	y	i, ī			
Linguals	t	th	d	dh	ṇ	r, l				
Dentals	t	th	d	dh	n	l			s (surd)	
Labials	p	ph	b	bh	m	v	u, ū			

m (niggahita)—sonant.

7. *l*, is now generally considered to be a semi-vowel and it is a *liquid*, a modification of *l*; in palm-leave MSS *l* and *l* are constantly interchanged. *l* is not seldom the substitute of *ḷ*; it is a lingual because it is pronounced as the letters of that class (*t*, *th* etc).

8. *ṃ* or *niggahīta*, comports, properly speaking no classification; it is merely a nasal breathing found only after the short vowels; *aṃ*, *iṃ*, *uṃ*.

9. The *Gutturals*, are so called from their being pronounced in the throat;

The *Palatals*, from being uttered by pressing the tongue on the front-palate;

The *Linguals* are formed by bringing the up-turned tip of the tongue in contact with the back of the palate;

The *Dentals* are so called from their being pronounced with the aid of the teeth;

The *Labials* are formed by means of the lips;

The *Nasals* are sounded through the nose;

The *Sibilant* has a hissing sound; and,

The *Spirant* a strong aspirated breathing.

The *Mutes* are so called on account of their not being readily pronounced without the aid of a vowel;

*Surds* are hard, flat, and toneless;

The *Sonants* are soft and uttered with a checked tone;

The *Liquids*, readily combine with other consonants (except, perhaps, *l*);

The *Aspirates* are pronounced with a strong breathing or *h* sound added to them;

The *Unaspirates* are pronounced naturally, without effort and without the *h* sound.

## THE PRONUNCIATION.

## THE VOWELS.

10. *a* is pronounced like *a* in *art*.

ā	„	„ <i>a</i> „	<i>father</i> .
ī	„	„ <i>i</i> „	<i>sin; pin</i> .
ī	„	„ <i>ee</i> „	<i>been, sheen</i> .
u	„	„ <i>u</i> „	<i>put, bull</i> .
ū	„	„ <i>oo</i> „	<i>tool, boon</i> .
e	„	„ <i>a</i> „	<i>table fate</i> .
o	„	„ <i>o</i> „	<i>bone, stone</i> .

## THE CONSONANTS.

11. *Remark*.—In all cases, the aspirates are pronounced like the unaspirates, but with the addition of a strong *h* sound; hence the pronunciation of the unaspirates only is given.

*k* is pronounced like *k* in *king*.

g	„	„ <i>g</i> „	<i>garden, go</i> .
ñ	„	„ <i>ng</i> „	<i>king, bring</i> .
c	„	„ <i>ch</i> „	<i>church, chip</i> .
j	„	„ <i>j</i> „	<i>jail, jar</i> .
ñ	„	„ <i>ny</i> „	<i>banyan</i> .
t	„	„ <i>t</i> „	<i>table, tack</i> .

*th*, it must be borne in mind, is never pronounced like the English—*th*, in such words as: *the, thin*, etc. It is merely—*t*, uttered with an effort.

*d* is pronounced like *d* in *deed*.

n	„	„ <i>n</i> „	<i>nag</i> .
p	„	„ <i>p</i> „	<i>part</i> .

ph, it must be remarked, is simply the aspirate of p, and ought not to be pronounced like f. (as in; philosophy).

b is pronounced like b in book. m, y, r, l, s, h are pronounced like the corresponding English letters.

v not preceded by a consonant, has the sound of v, in vine, vile. But preceded by a consonant, it is sounded like w in wind, win; tvā, therefore, is pronounced twā.

m, (*niggahīta*), found always at the end of words, is, in Burma, pronounced like m in, jam, ram; in Ceylon, it is given the sound of ng in, bring, king.

### CONJUNCT CONSONANTS.

12. Two consonants coming together form what is called a *conjunct* or *double-consonant*. For instance, in: *vassa*, *kattha* and *pandopeti*, the ss, tth, and nd, are conjunct-consonants.

13. Only the letters of a same *vagga* or group (*vis.*, the five divisions of the mutes; gutturals, palatals, etc.,) can be brought together to form a conjunct-consonant: the first and second, and the third and fourth only; the fifth letter of each group, that is the *nasal*, can be coupled with any of the other four consonants in its group.

## CHAPTER II.

### SANDHI—(EUPHONY).

14. Sandhi (union) is that part of the grammar which treats of the euphonic changes that occur when one word is joined to another.

15. Generally these changes occur:

(a) When a word ending in a vowel is joined to a word beginning with a vowel.

(b) When a word *ending in a vowel*, is joined to another word *beginning with a consonant*.

(c) When a word ending in *Niggahīta* (m) is followed by a word beginning either with a vowel or with a *consonant*.

16. From the above it will be seen that *sandhi* is of three kinds.

(I) Vowel-sandhi; (II) mixed and (III) Niggahīta-sandhi.

*Remark*—It is not absolutely necessary that the student should master thoroughly the rules of Sandhi before beginning the study of the other chapters; but he should read them once carefully, and always refer to them whenever in the course of his reading he finds forms and combinations that puzzle him.

### I.—VOWEL-SANDHI.

17. A vowel *before* another vowel is elided.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Elision of a.* Yassa + indriyāni = Yassindriyāni.

ajja + uposatho = ajjuposatho.

*Elision of ā.* Mā + āvuso evarupam akāsi = māvuso etc.

Tadā + utthahi = tadutthahi.

*Elision of i.* Udadhi + ūmiyo = Udadhūmiyo.

Aggi + āhito = aggāhito.

*Elision of ī.* Bhikkhuni + ovādo = Bhikkhunovādo.

Migī + va = migīva.

*Elision of u.* Dhātu + yatanāni = dhātayatanāni.

Dhātu + indriyāni = dhātindriyāni.

*Elision of ū.* Jambū + ādini = jambādini.

Jambū + itta vātana = jambītta vātana.

*Elision of e*, Laddho me + okāso = laddho m'okāso.  
Gāthā me + udīritā = Gāthā m'udīritā.

*Elision of o*, Eso + āvuso āyasmā = es'āvuso āyasmā.

*Remarks*—When ī is followed by a vowel it is *very seldom elided*: in the expression tuṇhassa, however, we have an example of its elision; tuṇhassa = tuṇhī + assa; tuṇhī ahesum, remains without change.

18. A vowel coming *after* another vowel may, if it is dissimilar, be elided.

EXAMPLES.

- (i) Cakkhu + indriyam = Cakkhundriyam.
- (ii) Yassa + idāni = Yass'idāni.

19. The *first* vowel having been elided the following vowel may be lengthened.

EXAMPLES.

- (i) Tatra + ayam = tatrāyam.
- (ii) Sa + atthika = sātthika.
- (iii) kiki + iva = kikīva.
- (iv) Kamma + upanissayo = kammūpanissayo.

[A short vowel, a, i, u, is lengthened by putting a —(dash) over it.]

20. Sometimes, the *second* vowel having been elided, the preceding vowel is lengthened.

EXAMPLES.

- (i) Vi + atimānenti = vitimānenti.
- (ii) Kimsu + idha vittam = Kimsūdha vittam.

21. Generally :

- (i) a or ā + i or ī = e.
- (ii) a or ā + u or ū = o.

## EXAMPLES.

I.—a or ā + i or ī.

- (i) Upa + ikkhati = upekkhati.
- (ii) Jina + ĭritanayo = jineritanayo.
- (iii) Ava + icca = avecca.
- (iv) Bandhussa + iva = bandhusseva.

**Exceptions.** (a)—*iti* preceded by *a* becomes *āti*, as :

- (i) tassa + iti = tassāti.
- (ii) Tissa + iti = Tissāti.

(b)—*i* may be elided after *a*; as :

- (i) pana + ime = pana'me.
- (ii) tena + ime = tena'me.

(c)—Sometimes ā + i becomes ī; as ;  
Seyyathā + idaṃ = seyyathīdaṃ.

II.—a or ā + u or ū.

- (i) Canda + udayo = candodayo.
- (ii) na + upeti = nopeti.
- (iii) udaka + ūmi = udakomi.
- (iv) Yathā + udaka = yathodaka.

22. (a) When two vowels of the same organ meet, the result is generally long : that is :

a + a = ā ; a + ā = ā : ā + a = ā : ā + ā = ā.  
 i + i = ī ; i + ī = ī : ī + i = ī : ī + ī = ī.  
 u + u = ū ; u + ū = ū, ū + u = ū ; ū + ū = ū.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) ñāṇa + ālokena = ñāṇālokena.
- (ii) demi + iti = demīti.

22. (b) *i* and *u* may, *before* verbs beginning with a vowel, remain unchanged.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) gāthāhi ajjhabhāsi.
- (ii) adhivāsesi avihaññamāno.
- (iii) satthu adāsi.

23. A *final* vowel may remain unchanged *before* any other vowel when *not* followed by -iti, in the following cases :

- (a) In nouns in the Vocative case :  
Kaṣṣappa etaṃ.....
- (b) In a word ending in a long vowel, if it does not form a compound with the following word :  
Bhagavā uṭṭhāyāsanā.
- (c) *After* particles, vowels remain unchanged.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) Atho + anto ca = atho anto ca.
- (ii) atha kho + āyasmā = atha kho āyasmā.
- (iii) No + atikkamo = no atikkamo.

*Remarks.*—The particles, called *nipāta*, are indeclinable; they are rather numerous; the following are a few of them and the most common : atha, atho, yeva, adho, yathā, tathā, tāva, yāva. eva, iva, va, re, are, ca, hi, tu, kacci, kho, khalu, kira, pana, ce, nanu, nūna, nāma, etc., etc.\*

---

\* There are two kinds of indeclinable words: the *Nipāta* or adverbs and the *Upasagga*, or prepositions. The *prepositions* are only 20 in number:

ā, u, ati, pati, pa, parī, ava, parā, adhi, abhi, anu, upa, apa, api, sam, vi, ni, nī, su, du (*Saddanīti: Catupadavibhāga*). All the other indeclinables are, of course, *nipāta*.



*Note.*—Final vowels before particles beginning with, a, i, e, as : atha, iva, eva follow the rules of sandhi, as ;—

(i) itthī + iti = itthīti.

(ii) sabbe + eva = sabbe'va.

(iii) so + eva = sveva.

(vi) na + ettha = n'ettha.

(d) *i* and *u* before *a* verb may remain unchanged : see, 22 (b).

25. The vowel *e*, when followed by a *long dissimilar* vowel, and also when followed by a *short dissimilar* vowel followed by a conjunct consonant, may be elided.

#### EXAMPLES.

(i) Me + āsi = m'āsi.

(ii) Sace + assa = sac'assa.

26. After *o*, a vowel is usually elided.

#### EXAMPLES.

(i) Yo + ahaṃ = yo 'haṃ.

(ii) cattāro + ime = cattāro 'me.

#### Transformation of Vowels into Semi-vowels.

27. The vowels *i*, *u*, *e*, *o*, when followed by another vowel may be transformed into their semi-vowels.

(i) The semi-vowel of *i* and *e*, is *y*.

(ii) The semi-vowel of *u* and *o*, is *v*.

#### (IX)

(a)—Final *i*, before a dissimilar vowel is changed to *y*.

(i) vi + ākāsi = vyākāsi.

(ii) vitti + anubhuyyate = vittyanubhuyyate.

(iii) dāsi + ahaṃ + dāsyāhaṃ.

*Remarks.*—iti + eva = itveva.

(b)—In such words as: *me, te, ke, ye*, etc. *e* is changed to *y*; and, if the *a* following *e*, stands before a single consonant, it is lengthened to *ā*.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) *me + ahaṃ = myāhaṃ.*
- (ii) *me + ayaṃ = myāyaṃ.*
- (iii) *te + ayaṃ = tyāyaṃ.*
- (iv) *te + ahaṃ = tyāhaṃ.*
- (v) *ke + assa = kyassa (34).*

**Exceptions.** (a)—Final *e* may be elided before a long vowel; as:  
*me + āsi = m'āsi.*

(b) Final *e* may be elided before a short vowel followed by a double consonant; as: *sace + assa = sac'assa.*

(c) Final *e* sometimes elides a following vowel; as:  
(i) *te + ime = te 'me.*  
(ii) *sace + ajja = sace 'jja*

(d) Final *e + a* may give *ā*; as:  
*sace + ayaṃ = sacāyaṃ.*

## II.

(a)—When *u*, is followed by a dissimilar vowel, it is changed to *v*.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) *anu + eti = anveti.*
- (ii) *dhātu + anta = dhātvanta.*
- (iii) *dhātu + attha = dhātvattha.*
- (iv) *bahu + ābādho = bahvābādho.*
- (v) *su + āgataṃ = svāgataṃ.*
- (vi) *anu + aḍḍhamāsāṃ = anvāḍḍhamāsāṃ.*

**Exceptions.** (a)—Final *u* may be elided before a dissimilar vowel; as :

sametu + āyasmā = samet' āyasmā.

(b) Not seldom, *u* + *i* gives *ū*; as :

Sādhu + iti = sād'hūti

(b) Final *o*, may be changed to *v* before a dissimilar vowel.

#### EXAMPLES.

(i) ko + attho = kvattho.

(ii) agamā nu kho + idha = agamā nu khvidha.

(iii) yato + adhikaraṇam = yatvadhikaraṇam.

(iv) yo + ayaṃ = yvāyaṃ.

**Exception.** Final *o* before a long vowel or a short vowel followed by a double consonant is generally elided; as :

(i) kuto + ettha = kut'ettha.

(ii) tato + uddham = tat'uddham.

(iii) tayo + assu = tay'assu.

**Remarks 1.**—The change of *u* and *o* to *v* occurs chiefly when *u* or *o* comes after one of the following consonants : *k*, *kh*, *t*, *th*, *d*, *na*, *y*, *s* and *h*\*

2.—Sometimes, after *i* or *ī*, *y* is inserted before a word beginning with a vowel, to avoid a hiatus as :

(i) aggi + āgāre = aggiyāgāre.

(ii) sattamī + atthe = sattamīyatthe.

---

\* *Saddanīti*, part III, *Saadhissuttamālā*.

3.—Similarly, to avoid a hiatus, a *v* is inserted between final *u* and another vowel; as :

(i) *du + aṅgikaṃ = duvaṅgikaṃ.*

(ii) *bhikkhu + āsane = bhikkhuvāsane.*

(See *Consonantal Insertions*).

## CONSONANTAL INSERTIONS.

28 (a) Not seldom, to avoid a hiatus, a consonant is inserted between two vowels.

(b) The consonants thus inserted are : *y, v, m, d, n, t, r, l (=l)* and *h*.\*

(c) Of these, the most frequently used are : *d, r, m, y* and *v*.

*Remarks.*—Some of these consonants are mere revivals from the older language, as in :

*puna + eva = punareva.*

Here, the *r* is simply revived.

### EXAMPLES OF INSERTION OF CONSONANTS.

Insertion of *y*, (i) *na + imassa = nayimassa.*

„ (ii) *mā + evaṃ = māyevaṃ.*

„ (iii) *santi + eva = santiyeva.*

„ of *v*, (i) *bhū + ādāya = bhūvādāya.*

„ (ii) *migī bhantā + udikkhati = migī bhantā vudikkhati.*

„ (iii) *pa + uccati = pavuccati.*

„ of *m*, (i) *idha + āhu = idhamāhu.*

„ (ii) *lahu + essati = lahumessati.*

„ (iii) *bhāyati + eva = bhāyatimeva.*

---

\* *Sa danitī* gives also, *h*.

Insertion of *d*, (i) saki + eva = sakideva.

„ (ii) tāva + eva = tāvadeva.

„ (iii) sammā + aññā = sammādaññā.

*Remarks.*—The insertion of *d*, is constant after the particle *u*, and very frequent after : sakim, kenaci, kiñci, kinniñci, koci, sammā, yāva, tāva, puna ; as well as after the bases of pronouns such as : ya, ta, sa, etc.\*, as :

u + aggo = udaggo ; u + apādi = udapādi ; kenaci + eva = kenacideva ; yāva + attham = yāvadattham ; puna + eva = punadeva ; ta + attham = tadattham ; ta + antaro = tadantaro ; eta + attham = etadattham.

Insertion of *n*, (i) ito + āyati = itonāyati.

„ (ii) ciraṃ + āyati = ciraṃ nāyati or ciraṇnāyati (30)

„ of *t*, (i) yasmā + iha = yasmātiha.

„ (ii) ajja + agge = ajjatagge.

*Remarks.*—The insertion of *t*, mostly takes place after the words : yāva, tāva, ajja, before iha and agga.

Insertion of *r*, (i) ni + antaraṃ = nīrantaraṃ.

„ (ii) ni + ojaṃ = nīrojaṃ.

„ (iii) du + atikkamo = duratikkamo.

„ (iv) du + ājāno = durājāno.

„ (v) pātu + ahosi = pāturahosi.

„ (vi) catu + ārakkhā = caturārakkhā.

---

\* *Mahārūpasiddhi (Sandhi)*. It must, however, be remarked that the *d* is, in most words, a survivance from the older language ; Sansk. has invariably preserved it. Thus *u*, of the native Pali grammarians is but the Sansk ; ud ; so...*ci*...cid, etc.

*Remarks 1.*—Between *tathā eva* and *yathā eva*, *ri* is often inserted; the *ā* preceding is shortened and the *e* of *eva* elided:

*tathariva, yathariva.*

2.—This consonant *r*, is mostly inserted after the particles: *ni*, *du*, *pātu*, *puna*, *dhi*, *pāta*, *catu*, and a few others. In most cases it is simply revived.

Insertion of *l*, = *|*.

(i) *cha + aṅgaṃ = cha|aṅgaṃ.*

(ii) *cha + aṃsa = cha|aṃsa.*

*Remarks.*—*l* = *|*, is generally inserted after: *cha* (six).

Insertion of *h* (i) *su + ujuca = suhujuca.*

(ii) *su + uṭṭhitam = suhuṭṭhitam.*

## II.—CONSONANTAL SANDHI.

29. Consonantal Sandhi occurs when a word *ending* in a vowel is followed by a word *beginning* with a consonant.

30. In the majority of cases, *Consonantal Sandhi* is resorted to, to meet the exigencies of *metres*; but not always.

31. *Before* a consonant, a *long* vowel may be shortened.

(i) *yathā + bhāvī + guṇena = yathabhāviguṇena.*

(ii) *yitṭham vā hutam vā loke = yitṭham va hutam va loke.*

32. A vowel, *before* a consonant, if short, may be lengthened:

(i) *Evam gāme muni care = evam gāme muni care.*

(ii) *du + rakkham = dūrakkham.*

(iii) *su + rakkham = sūrakkham.*

33. A consonant *following* a word or a particle ending in a vowel, is generally reduplicated.

#### EXAMPLES.

- (i) idha + pamādo = idhappamādo.
- (ii) su + paṭṭhito = suppaṭṭhito.
- (iii) vi + payutto = vippayutto.
- (iv) a + pativattiyo = appativattiyo.
- (v) pa + kamo = pakkamo.
- (vi) yathā + kamaṃ = yathakkamaṃ (34).
- (vii) aṇu + gaho = anuggaho.
- (viii) vi + jotati = vijjotati.
- (ix) kata + ñū = kattaññū.
- (x) du + labho = dullabho.
- (xi) du + silo = dussilo.

*Remarks 1.*—v, after a vowel becomes bb : as :

- (i) ni + vānaṃ = nibbānaṃ.
- (ii) ni + vāyati = nibbāyati.
- (iii) du + vinicchayo = dubbinicchayo.

2.—Reduplication of the consonants takes place generally after the prefixes :

u, upa, pari, ati, pa, a, anu, etc.

3.—The constant rule in reduplication is that an aspirate is reduplicated by an unaspirate, and an unaspirate by an unaspirate.

That is to say, an unaspirate is reduplicated by itself.

34. The vowel preceding a conjunct consonant being prosodically long, the naturally long vowels—ā, ī, ū, are not allowed to stand before a double consonant.

35. When, according to para 33, a consonant is reduplicated *after* a particle ending in a *long vowel*, this vowel is shortened, as :

ā + kamati = akkamati.

parā + kamo = parakkamo.

**Exceptions.**—There are, however, a few exceptions to paras 34, 35. The following are the most common examples :

(i) na + añña = nāñña.

(ii) na + assa = nāssa.

(iii) na + assu = nāssu.

(iv) kasmā + assa = kasmāssa.

(v) tatra + assa = tatrāssa.

(vi) sa + antevāsiko = santevāsiko.

(vii) sa + atthi = sātthi.

(viii) vedanā + khandho = vedanākkhandho, etc.

36. (a) Before a consonant, the *o* in : so, eso, may be changed to *a*; as :

(i) eso dhammo *or* esa dhammo.

(ii) So muni *or* sa muni.

(b) Sometimes, this change occurs even *before a vowel*, thus creating a hiatus, which is allowed to remain :

so attho *or* sa attho.

(c) The same change (of *o* to *a*), occurs also, *but not so frequently*, in : ayo (iron), mano (the mind), tamo (darkness), paro (other), tapo (penance, mortification) and a few others; as :

ayopattam *or* ayapattam, etc.



## III.—NIGGAHĪTA SANDHI.

37. Niggahīta sandhi takes place when a word ending in *m̐* (*niggahīta*), is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, or with a consonant.

38. Niggahīta when followed by a consonant, may remain unchanged.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) taṃ dhammaṃ kataṃ
- (ii) taṃ khaṇaṃ.
- (iii) taṃ patto.

39. Niggahīta, followed by a consonant, may be transformed to the *nasal* of the class to which that consonant belongs.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) raṇaṃ + jaho = raṇaṇjaho.
- (ii) taṇhaṃ + karo = taṇhaṅkaro.
- (iii) saṃ = ṭhito = saṅṭhito.
- (iv) jutim + dharo = jutindharo.
- (v) saṃ + mato = sammato.
- (vi) evaṃ + kho = evaṅ kho.
- (vii) dhammaṃ + ca = dhammaṅ ca.
- (viii) taṃ + niccutaṃ = tannaiccutaṃ

*Remarks.*—Before initial *l*, the niggahīta of *saṃ* and *puṃ* is changed to *l*; as :

- (i) saṃ + lakkhaṇā = sallakkhaṇā.
- (ii) paṭi saṃ līno = paṭisallīno.
- (iii) saṃ + lekho = sallekho.
- (iv) puṃ + līgaṃ = pulligaṃ.

40. Niggahīta, followed by *e* or *h* is changed to ññ and ñh respectively.

- (i) tañ + eva = tañ ñeva.
- (ii) paccantarañ + eva = paccantarañ ñeva.
- (iii) evañ + hi kho = evañ hi kho.
- (iv) tañ + hitassa = tañ hitassa.

41. *y* following niggahīta, becomes assimilated to it, and both together may become ññ; as :

- (i) sañ + yuttañ = saññuttañ.
- (ii) sañ + yogo = saññogo.

*Remarks.*—Not seldom, no coalescence takes place, and both letters remain unchanged :

sañyuttañ; sañyojanañ.

42. When preceding a vowel, niggahīta becomes *m*; as :

- (i) tañ + atthañ = tam atthañ.
- (ii) Yañ + āhu = yam āhu.
- (iii) kim + etañ = kim etañ.

*Remarks.*—Rules 39 and 42, are not strictly adhered to, in texts edited in Roman characters; in prose above all, niggahīta is allowed to remain unchanged before a vowel or a consonant, even in the middle of a word sometimes; in poetry, the retention of niggahīta or its change to *m* before a vowel, is regulated by the exigencies of the metres.

43. Sometimes, niggahīta before a vowel, may become *d* :

- (i) etañ + attho = etadattho.
- (ii) etañ + eva = etadeva.
- (iii) etañ + avoca = etadavoca.
- (iv) yañ + anantarañ = yadanantarañ.

yam + idam = yadidam.

*Remarks.*—The change of niggahīta into *d* is more fictitious than real; in most examples, the *d* is simply a survivance. (see *Insertion of consonants*). .

44. Niggahīta, before a vowel or a consonant may be elided; as :

- (i) tām + aham santike = tāsāham santike.
- (ii) ariyasaccānam + dassanam = ariyasaccāna-dassanam.
- (iii) etam Buddhānam + sāsanam = etam Buddhānasāsanam.

45. A niggahīta may sometimes be inserted before a vowel or a consonant;

- (i) ava siro = avamsiro.
- (ii) manopubba gamā = manopubbangamā.
- (iii) cakkhu + udapādi = cakkhum udapādi.
- (iv) yāva c' idha bhikkhave = yāvañ c' idha.....

46. After niggahīta, a vowel may be elided;

- (i) kim + iti = kinti.
- (ii) idam + api = idam pi.
- (iii) cakkam + iva = cakkam va.
- (iv) kalim + idāni = kalim 'dāni or kalin dāni.

## INTERCHANGE OF LETTERS.

47. Not unfrequently an interchange of letters takes place; as :

- (i) dh becomes h Ex; rudhira = ruhiro.
- (ii) d „ t „ sugado = sugato.
- (iii) t „ t „ pahato = pahato.



## CHAPTER III.

## ASSIMILATION.

51. The matter included in this chapter should perhaps have come under the head of "*sandhi*," for assimilation is nothing but changes that occur for the sake of euphony.

I have remarked that, although the rules of *sandhi*, as explained in the preceding chapter, are readily understood and applied by the young students, the laws of assimilation puzzle them not a little, and retard their reading much more than is necessary. The difficulty thus experienced arises from their ignorance of Sanskrit, without a—at least slight—knowledge of which, the study of Pāli becomes sensibly more difficult.

In the following paragraphs, I shall try and explain as succinctly and as clearly as possible, the rules of assimilation. The student cannot be too much recommended to study thoroughly this chapter and to refer to it constantly in the course of his studies.

52. Assimilation is the blending into one of two consonantal sounds. It involves the change of one sound to another of the same series, but sometimes also to a sound of another series. (See page 2).

53. Assimilation is of two kinds : —

- (i) The *initial* consonant is assimilated to the *final* consonant of the preceding word. This is called : **Progressive Assimilation.**
- (ii) The *final* consonant of the preceding word is assimilated to the *initial* consonant of the word that follows. This is called : **Regressive Assimilation.**

## EXAMPLES.

## I.—PROGRESSIVE ASSIMILATION.

- I. (a) √ lag (to cling) + na = lagna = lagga (clung).  
 II. (b) budh (to know) + ta = budhta = buddha  
 (known).

It will be remarked that in example (a), the *n* (dental) has been assimilated to the *g* which belongs to another series (guttural).

In (b), the *t*, becomes *d*, and assimilates to the preceding *dh*, both being sounds of the same series (dentals).

## II.—REGRESSIVE ASSIMILATION.

- I. (a) √ lip (to smear) + ta = lipta = littā (smeared).  
 II. (b) √ dām (to subdue) + ta = damta = danta  
 (subdued).

In these two examples, *p*, in (a), is assimilated to initial *t* and passes to another series of sounds.

In (b), *m* likewise passing to another series, assimilates itself to *t* and becomes *n*:

## GENERAL RULES OF ASSIMILATION.

54. Assimilation takes place mostly in the formation of the *Passive Voice*, the *Passive Perfect Participle*, the *base of verbs* of the *third conjugation*, of the *Infinitive*, *Gerund*, the *Potential Passive Participle*, and in the formation of the *Desiderative*; also under the influence of certain suffixes in the derivation of words.

55. In Pāli, Regressive Assimilation is the more common.

56. (a) When a *mute* meets with an initial mute (non-nasal), there is regressive assimilation *generally*, that is, the first consonant is assimilated to the second.

(i) sak + ta = sakta = satta.

(ii) sak + thi = sakthi = satthi.

57. A *guttural* assimilates the following dental :

lag + na = lagna = lagga.

sak + no = sakno = sakko + ti = sakkoti.

58. A *guttural* assimilates a *final* dental :

(i) ud + kamāpeti = ukkamāpeti.

(ii) tad + karo = takkaro.

(iii) ud + gacchati = uggacchati.

59. A final *palatal*\* being followed by a *dental* surd or sonant, assimilates it into a *lingual* :

(i) √maj + ta = matṭha or matṭa.

(ii) √pucch + ta = putṭha.

(iii) √icch + ta = itṭha.

---

\*To better understand these changes, the student ought to bear in mind that no word can end in a *palatal* nor in *h*, because these letters are not primitive letters : the palatals have sprung into existence from the contact of *guttural* consonants with certain vowels ; and *h* represents an old *gh* and is the aspirate of *j* ; the original gutturals, therefore, reappear at the end of words either pure or transformed into a *lingual*, and then assimilate or are assimilated by the following *dental*. For instance : √pucch = puṭh + ta = putṭha, but, √muc = muk + ta = mukta = mutta ; √bhuj = bhuk + ta = bhukta = bhutta ; again √maj = maṭ (t = Sank. ṣ) + ta = matṭa. In Sansk., √mrj + ta = mrṣta = Pāli : matṭa.

(a) *j* however sometimes is assimilated to the following *t* :

(iv)  $\sqrt{\text{bhuj}} + \text{ta} = \text{bhutta}$ .

(b) *c* also becomes assimilated to *t* :

(v)  $\sqrt{\text{muc}} + \text{ta} = \text{mutta}$ .

60. But an *initial* palatal assimilates a final dental in palatal :

$\text{ud} + \text{cinati} = \text{uccinati}$ .

$\text{ud} + \text{chedi} = \text{ucchedi}$ .

$\text{ud} + \text{jala} = \text{ujjala}$ .

$\text{ud} + \text{jhāyati} = \text{ujjhāyati}$ .

61. A final *lingual* assimilates a following *surd dental*, (*t*) :

$\sqrt{\text{kuṭṭ}} + \text{ta} = \text{kuṭṭha}$ .

62. A final *dental* is assimilated to the following consonant :

(i)  $\text{ud} + \text{gaṇhāti} = \text{uggaṇhāti}$ .

(ii)  $\text{ud} + \text{khipati} = \text{ukkipati}$ .

(iii)  $\text{ud} + \text{chindati} = \text{ucchindati}$ .

(iv)  $\text{ud} + \text{jhāyati} = \text{ujjhāyati}$ .

(v)  $\text{ud} + \text{sāha} = \text{ussāha}$ .

(vi)  $\text{ud} + \text{tiṇṇa} = \text{uttiṇṇa}$ .

(vii)  $\text{ud} + \text{lōketi} = \text{ulloketi}$ .

63. When *initial t*, follows a *sonant aspirate*, the assimilation is progressive : the *final sonant aspirate* loses its aspiration, the following *t* (*surd*) becomes sonant, *vis*; *d*, and taking the aspiration which the final sonant has lost, becomes *dh*.

#### EXAMPLES.

$\sqrt{\text{rudh}} + \text{ta} = \text{rudh} + \text{da} = \text{rud} + \text{dha} = \text{ruddha}$ .



*Remarks.*—In the case of final *bh*, initial *t* having become *dh*, regressive assimilation takes place ;

√ labh + ta = labh + da = lab + dha = laddha.

64. Before an *initial* dental surd, a guttural or a labial surd unaspirate is generally assimilated :

(i) tap + ta = tapta = tatta.

(ii) sak + ta = sakta = satta.

(iii) sak + thi = \*akthi = satthi.

(iv) kam + ta = kamta = kanta.

65. An *initial* labial generally assimilates a preceding dental surd or sonant unaspirate :

(i) tad + purisa = tappurisa.

(ii) ud + bhijjati = ubbhijjati.

(iii) ud + pajjati = uppajjati.

(iv) ud + majjati = ummajjati.

66. A *final* labial may assimilate an *initial* nasal :

pāp + no + ti = pāpno + ti = pappoti.

### ASSIMILATION OF NASALS.

67. Final *m* before *t* is assimilated :

√ gam + tvā = gamtvā = gantvā.

68. The group *sm* is preserved :

tasmīn, bhāsmā, asmā, usmā.

69. An *initial* nasal assimilates a preceding dental :

(i) ud + magga = un + magga = ummagga.

*Remarks.*—Here final *d*, being before a nasal, is first changed to the nasal of its class, that is *n*, and this *n* (dental) is then assimilated to *m* (labial). So for, *gantvā* in 67.

- (i)  $ud + nadati = unnadati.$   
 (ii)  $\checkmark chid + na = chinna.*$

### ASSIMILATION OF Y.

70. Y is regularly assimilated to the *preceding* consonant by Progressive Assimilation.

71. The assimilation of *y* takes place principally in the Passive Voice, in the formation of verbal bases of the 3rd conjugation, of some gerunds and of numerous derived nouns.

- (i)  $\checkmark gam + ya = gamya = gamma.$   
 (ii)  $\checkmark pac + ya = pacya = pacca.$   
 (iii)  $\checkmark mad + ya = madya = majja.$   
 (iv)  $\checkmark bhaṇ + ya = bhaṇya = bhaṇṇa.$   
 (v)  $\checkmark div + ya = divya = dibba.$   
 (vi)  $\checkmark khād + ya = khādyā = khajja$  (34).  
 (vii)  $\checkmark khan + ya = khanya = khaṇṇa.$

72. This rule holds good also in the middle of a compound word: final *i* having become *y* by Rule 27 (i) (a), is assimilated to the preceding consonant, and the following word is joined on to form a compound:

### EXAMPLES.

- (i)  $pali* + aṅko = paly aṅko = pallaṅko.$   
 (ii)  $vipali* + āso = vipaly āso = vipallāso.$   
 (iii)  $vipali + atthaṃ = vipaly atthaṃ = vipallatthaṃ.$

\*The preposition *pari*, is not seldom changed into *pali*.

- (iv) *api* + *ekacce* = *apy ekacce* = *appekacce*.  
 (v) *api* + *ekadā* = *apy ekadā* = *appekadā*.  
 (vi) *abhi* + *uggacchati* = *abhy uggacchati* = *abh-hugacchati*.  
 (vii) *abhi* + *okiraṇaṃ* = *abhy okiraṇaṃ* = *abbhokiraṇaṃ*.  
 (viii) *abhi* + *añjanaṃ* = *abhy añjanaṃ* = *abbhañjanaṃ*.  
 (ix) *āni* + *āyo* = *āny āyo* = *aññāyo* (34, 35).

73. By far the most common changes occurring through the assimilation of *y* (final as in the above examples) or of *y* (initial as in 71), take place when the dental surd unspirate *t* or the dental sonant aspirate or unspirate *d*, *dh* precedes. To state the rule shortly :

74. (i) *final ti* + any dissimilar vowel becomes *cc* + that vowel.  
 (ii) „ *dhi* + „ „ „ *jjh* + that vowel.  
 (iii) „ *di* + „ „ „ *jj* + that vowel.  
 (iv) „ *t* + *y* = *cc*.  
 (v) „ *d* + *y* = *jj*.  
 (vi) „ *dh* + *y* = *jjh*.

#### EXAMPLES.

- (i) *ati* + *antaṃ* = *aty antaṃ* = *accantaṃ*.  
 (ii) *pati* + *ayo* = *paty ayo* = *paccayo*.  
 (iii) *pati* + *eti* = *paty eti* = *pacceti*.  
 (iv) *iti* + *assa* = *ity assa* = *iccassa*.  
 (v) *iti* + *ādi* = *ity ādi* = *iccādi*.  
 (vi) *jāti* + *andho* = *jāty andho* = *jaccandho* (34, 35).

- (vii) adhi + āgamo = adhy āgamo = ajjhāgamo.  
 (viii) adhi + ogāhitvā = adhy ogāhitvā = ajjhogāhi-  
 tvā.  
 (ix) adhi + upagato = adhy upagato = ajjhupaga-  
 to.  
 (x) adhi + eti = adhy eti = ajjheti.  
 (xi) nadi + ā = nady ā = najjā.  
 (xii) yadi + evaṃ = yady evaṃ = yajjevam.  
 (xiii) sat + ya = satya = sacca.  
 (xiv) paṇḍita + ya = paṇḍitya = paṇḍicca.  
 (xv) √ mad + ya = madya = majja.  
 (xvi) √ vad + ya = vadya = vajja.  
 (xvii) √ rudh + ya = rudhya = rujjha.

75. Final *th* + *y* = *cch* ; as :  
 tath + ya = tathya = taccha.

76. A final *sibilant* may assimilate a following *y* :

- (i) √ pas + ya = pasya = passa.  
 (ii) √ dis + ya = disya = dissa.

77. *v* + *y* = becomes — *bb* :

- √ div + ya = divya = dibba.  
 √ siv + ya = sivya = sibba.

*Remarks.*—At the *beginning* of a word, however, the *y* (the semi-vowel of *i*) is retained, and *v* is changed to *b* :

- (i) vi + ākaraṇam = vyākaraṇam = byākaraṇam.  
 (ii) vi + añjanam = vyañjanam = byañjanam.

78. When *y* follows *h*, *metathesis*\* takes place :

- (i) √ sah + ya = sahya, and by metathesis = sayha.  
 (ii) √ guh + ya = guhya = guyha.

---

\* Metathesis is the transposition of letters.

79. Initial *y*, may assimilate a final dental, non-nasal :

ud + yuñjati = uyyuñjati.

ud + yāti = uyyāti.

ud + yāna = uyyāna.

### ASSIMILATION OF *r*.

80. Final *r* is often assimilated to a following mute, as :

(i) ✓ kar + tabba = kattabba.

(ii) ✓ kar + tā = kattā.

(iii) ✓ kar + ya = kayya

(iv) ✓ dhar + ma = dhamma

81. Very often too, final *r* is dropped :

(i) ✓ mar + ta = mata.

(ii) ✓ kar + ta = kata.

82. Sometimes, *r* having been dropped, the vowel *a* before it, is lengthened :

(i) ✓ kar + tabba = kātabba.

(ii) ✓ kar + tum = kātum.

83. *r* followed by *n*, lingualizes the *n*, and then becomes assimilated to it :

✓ car + na = carṇa = ciṇṇa.

The student will understand the insertion of *i* when reading the chapter on Passive Perfect Participles.

84. Final *r* may be assimilated to a following *l* :

dur (=du) + labho = dullabho.

## ASSIMILATION OF S.

85. *s* (or *sa*) is assimilated by the preceding consonant, having first been transformed into a *guttural* or a *palatal*.

86. Final *j* + *sa* = *kkha* :

(i) *titij* + *sa* = *titikkha*.

(ii) *bubhuj* + *sa* = *bubhukkha*.

87. Final *p* + *sa* = *ccha* :

*jigup* + *sa* = *jiguccha*.

88. Final *t* + *sa* = *ccha* :

*fikit* + *sa* = *tikiccha*.

89. Final *s* + *sa* = *ccha* :

*jighas* + *sa* = *jighaccha*.

90. Final *s* assimilates a following *y*.

✓ *nas* + *ya* = *nassa*. (Cf. 76).

91. But sometimes the combination remains unchanged. *alasa* + *ya* = *ālasya*.

92. Final *s*, assimilates an initial *t* into a lingual :

(i) ✓ *kas* + *ta* = *kaṭṭha*.

(ii) ✓ *kilis* + *ta* = *kiliṭṭha*.

(iii) ✓ *das* + *ta* = *daṭṭha*.

93. Initial *s* assimilates a preceding dental :

(i) ✓ *ud* (or *ut*) + *sāha* = *ussāha*.

(ii) ✓ *ud* (or *ut*) + *suka* = *ussuka*.

94. Pretty often, *s* + *t* = *tt* :

✓ *jhas* + *ta* = *jhatta*.

95. Sometimes too,  $s + t = tth$  :

√  $vas + ta = vuttha$ .

### ASSIMILATION OF $h$ .

96. Initial  $h$  sometimes is changed to the *mute aspirate* of the class of the preceding final consonant :

(i)  $ud + harati = uddharati$  :

(ii)  $ud + haraṇa = uddharāṇa$ .

(iit)  $ud + hata$  (√  $han$ ) =  $uddhata$ .

97. When final  $h$  is followed by a nasal, the group generally undergoes metathesis (*see* 78, note).

√  $gah + ṇa = gaṇha$ .

98. Metathesis also occurs in the groups  $hy$  and  $hv$ .

(i)  $mahyam$  becomes  $mayham$ .

(ii)  $oruh + ya$  becomes  $oruyha$ .

(iii)  $jihvā$  becomes  $jivhā$ .

*Remarks.*—Very seldom,  $h$  is assimilated to the following  $y$ ,  $leh + ya = leyya$ .

99.  $h$  is sometimes changed to  $gh$ ; (\*) principally in the root  $han$ , to kill.

$hanati$ , to kill, or  $ghaṭeti$ , to kill.

$ghañña$ , killing, from √  $han$  ( $han$  or  $ghan + ya$  =  $ghañña$ )

$ghammati$ , to go =  $hammati$ , to go.

---

\* It must be remembered that  $h$  is the aspirate of  $j$ , since it now represents an ancient  $gh$  (59, note) and therefore, in euphony, it is treated exactly as  $j$ , that is to say, when final it becomes sometimes  $k$  and sometimes  $z$ . The above rules, which may seem arbitrary are familiar to the Sanskritist.



100. Final  $h + t$  becomes generally  $ddha$ :

✓  $duh + ta = duddha$ .

101. Sometimes also  $h + t = dh$ .

✓  $lih + turn = ledhum$ .

(For the change of  $i$  to  $e$  see "Strengthening.")

102. It has been said above (7) that  $l$  is very often interchangeable with  $d$ ; when the  $q$  is aspirate, *vis.*,  $dh$ , its substitute also becomes aspirate, *vis.*,  $lh$ .

Now, according to para. 101, we have seen that  $h + t$  becomes  $dh$ ; for this  $dh$  may be substituted  $lh$ , so that we have the following forms:

✓  $muh + ta = mūdha = mūlhā$ .

✓  $ruh + ta = rūdha = rūlhā$ .

## CHAPTER IV.

### (a) STRENGTHENING PROCESS.

103. Strengthening is the process of changing a vowel sound into another vowel sound.

104. The vowels which undergo *strengthening* are  $a$ ,  $i$ ,  $ī$ ,  $u$  and  $ū$ .

105. Thus,  $a$  being strengthened, becomes  $ā$

$i$	„	„	„	$e$
$ī$	„	„	„	$e$
$u$	„	„	„	$o$
$ū$	„	„	„	$o$



106. The *result* thus obtained is also called *guṇa* (quality).

107. Therefore, the *guṇa* of *a* is *ā*  
 " " " " *i* and *ī* is *e*.  
 " " " " *u* and *ū* is *o*.

108. Further, as we already know (by rules 27 (i) *a* 27 (ii) *b*), final *e* and *o* when followed by a vowel may be changed into their semi-vowel + that vowel.

109. The following table of these very useful changes should be borne in mind:—

Simple vowel.	Strengthening or <i>guṇa</i> .	Vowel and semi-vowel.
<i>a</i>	<i>ā</i>	(none)
<i>i, ī</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>ay</i>
<i>u, ū</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>av</i>

110. Strengthening occurs frequently in the formation of Verbal bases, of Verbals\* and in the derivation of words under the influence of certain suffixes.

*Remarks.*—In the derivation of Primary and Secondary Nouns (see *Derivation*), it will simplify matters to assume at once that :

*i* or *ī* + *a* = *aya*.  
*u* or *ū* + *a* = *ava*.  
*e* + *a* = *aya*.  
*o* + *a* = *ava*.

\* See Chapter on Verbs.

## (b) METATHESIS.

111. Examples of metathesis have already (78) been given.

112. Metathesis is the transposition of letters or of syllables in a word; the following are further instances of this transposition :

- |       |              |         |               |
|-------|--------------|---------|---------------|
| (i)   | pariyudāhāsi | becomes | payirudāhāsi. |
| (ii)  | ariya        | „       | ayira.        |
| (iii) | kariyā       | „       | kayirā.       |
| (iv)  | māsaka       | „       | makasa.       |
| (v)   | rasmi        | „       | ramsī.        |
| (vi)  | na abhineyya | „       | anabhineyya.  |
| (vii) | cilimikā     | „       | cimilikā.     |

## (c) EPENTHESIS.

113. Epenthesis is the insertion of a letter in the middle of a word.

114. Epenthesis is resorted to mostly to avoid a hiatus, of the collocation of consonants of different organs.

## EXAMPLES.

- |          |         |                |
|----------|---------|----------------|
| klesa    | becomes | kilesa.        |
| ācārya   | „       | ācāriya.       |
| tiāṅgula | „       | tivāṅgula.     |
| hyo      | „       | hiyo or hiyyo. |
| arhati   | „       | arahati.       |
| barhisa  | „       | barihisa.      |
| hrada    | „       | harada.        |
| srī      | „       | sirī.          |
| hrī      | „       | hirī           |
| plavati  | „       | pilavati       |

etc.

## (d) DROPPING OF SYLLABLES.

115. Sometimes, for the sake of the metre, or to facilitate pronunciation, whole syllables are dropped.

## EXAMPLES.

- (i) abhiññāya sacchikatvā, becomes, abhiññā sacchikatva.
- (ii) Jambudīpaṃ avekkhanto addasa, becomes, Jambudīpaṃ avekkhanto adda.
- (iii) dasasahassī, becomes, dasahassī.
- (iv) chaḍaṅgula, becomes, chaṅgula.

## CHAPTER V.

## DECLENSION.

116. (a) Declension is the adding to the stems of Nouns and Adjectives certain suffixes which show, case, gender and number.

(b) The *stem* or *base* of a noun is that noun as it stands, before any suffix has been added to it.

(c) Pāli has three genders: the masculine, the feminine and the neuter.

(d) Pāli does not strictly follow the natural division of male, female, etc., in assigning gender to nouns; many nouns which are masculine in English are feminine or neuter in Pāli and *vice-versa*; a great number of nouns which we consider as neuter are, some masculine, some feminine in Pāli. This is called *grammatical gender*.

(e) There are two numbers: the singular and the plural.

(f) There are eight cases:

(1) *Nominative*, shewing the *subject* of the sentence.

(2) *Genitive*, shewing possession (*of*, *'s*).

- (3) *Dative*, shewing the object or person *to* or *for* whom something is given or done.  
 (4) *Accusative*, this is the *object* of the sentence.  
 (5) *Instrumentive*, shews the object or person *with* or *by* whom something is performed.  
 (6) *Ablative*, generally shewing separation, expressed by *from*.  
 (7) *Locative*, shewing place (*in, on, at, upon, etc.*)  
 (8) *Vocative*, used in addressing persons.

*Remarks.*—The student will find fuller explanations of the uses of the cases in the chapter on Syntax.

117. The declension of nouns is divided into two great divisions :

(a) *Vowel-declension*, comprising all the stems that end in a vowel.

(b) *Consonantal-declension*, in which are included all the stems ending in a consonant.

(c) *Vowel-declension* is generally, for the sake of clearness, divided again into three classes :

(i) the declension of stems ending in, *a* or, *ā* ;

(ii) the declension of stems ending in, *i* or, *ī* ;

(iii) the declension of stems ending in, *u* or, *ū*.

118. (a) Native grammarians give the following as the regular case-endings or suffixes for all nouns :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	s.	Nom.	yo.
Gen.	ssa.	Gen.	naṃ.
Dat.	ssa.	Dat.	naṃ.
Acc.	aṃ.	Acc.	yo.
Ins.	ā.	Ins.	hi.
Abl.	smā.	Abl.	hi.
Loc.	smiṃ.	Loc.	su.
Voc.	(like the stem of <i>Nom.</i> )	Voc.	(like the <i>Nom.</i> )

(b) Most of the above suffixes are theoretical only; in practice they differ considerably according to gender and case.

The actual suffixes will be given with each declension.

### VOWEL DECLENSION.

Declension of *stems ending in a* (short).

119. (a) The great bulk of nouns and adjectives belong to this declension, and as the other declensions have borrowed several of its suffixes, its thorough mastery is most important and will greatly facilitate the study of the other declensions.

(b) Nouns ending in *a*, are all masculine or neuter.

120. The following are the *suffixes* of masculine nouns the stem of which ends in *a* :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	o.	Nom.	ā, āse.
Gen.	ssa.	Gen.	nam.
Dat.	{ ssa. āya.	Dat.	nam.
Acc.	m.	Acc.	e.
Ins.	ina.	Ins.	ehi, ebhi.
Abl.	ā, smā, mhā, to.	Abl.	ehi, ebhi.
Loc.	i, smim, mhi.	Loc.	su.
Voc. (like the stem) and ā		Voc.	a.

121. These suffixes have to be attached to the stems, taking care to observe the sandhi rules which may apply when suffixes begin with vowel; in every case the student should accustom himself to look up the rules, which will be referred to by their numbers, and accustom himself to account for every form he meets with, whether nominal, verbal or derivative. He should remember that a systematic study from the start will ensure thoroughness and eventually save him a great deal of labour and time.

122. DECLENSION OF **DEVA**—GOD, ANGEL.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	devo, a god	devā, gods
Gen.	devassa, a god's, of a god	devānaṃ, gods', of gods
Dat.	devassa, to or for a god devāya	devānaṃ, to or for gods
Acc.	devaṃ, a god	deve, gods
Ins.	devena, by, with or on account of, a god	devehi, devebhi, by, with or on account of, gods
Abl.	devā, from a god devasmā, from a god devamhā, from a god devato, from a god	devehi, devebhi, from gods
Loc.	deve, in, on or upon a god devasmim, on or upon a god devamhi, on or upon a god	devesu, in, on or upon gods
Voc.	deva, devā, O god!	devā, O gods!

## EXERCISE.

Decline like *deva* (masc.)

nara, man	mātaṅga, elephant
byaggha, tiger	sīha, lion
miga, deer	orodha, a seraglio
gandhabba, musician	dhamma, doctrine, right
kacchapa, tortoise	putta, son
satta, being	kūpa, a mast
sumsumāra, crocodile	makara, a sea-monster

*Remarks.* (a) The true *Dat. sing.* in, *āya* has now generally been displaced by the suffix of the *Gen. ssa*; the *Dat. āya* is almost equal to an *Infinitive* and mostly denotes intention.

(b) *smā* and *mhā* of the *Abl.* and *smim* and *mhi* of the *Loc.* have been borrowed from the *pronominal declension* (see Declension of Pronouns).

(c) *so* is sometimes used also as an *Abl. sing.* suffix, as: *vaggaso*, by groups; *bhāgaso*, by share.

(d) *sā* is also found as an *Ins. sing.* suffix, as: *balasā*, by force, forcibly; *talasā*, with the sole of the foot.

(e) The *Nom. plur.* in *āse*, very scarce, corresponds to the *Vedic Nom. plur.*

(f) *ebhi*, of the *Ins.* and *Abl. plural*, is mostly used in poetry, and probably comes from the *Vedic ebhis*.

(g) Before *o*, *Nom. sing.*, *ehi*, *ebhi*, *Ins. and Abl. plur.* and *e*, *Acc. plur.* final *a* of the stem is dropped:

*deva* + *o* = *dev* + *o* = *devo*.

*deva* + *ehi* = *dev* + *ehi* = *devehi*.

(h) Before *su*, *Loc. plur.*, final *a* of stem is changed to *e*.

(i) In the *Dat.*, *Ins.*, *Abl.* and *Loc. sing.*; and in *Nom.* and *Voc. plur.*, the usual rules of sandhi are regularly followed:

*Singular.*

Ins.	deva + ina = devena	(21, 1)
Dat.	deva + āya = devāya	(22)
Loc.	deva + i = deve	(21, 1)
Abl.	deva + ā = devā	(22)

*Plural.*

Nom.	deva + a = devā	(ibid)
	deva + āse = devāse	(,,)
Voc.	devā + a = devā	(,,)

(j) Before *nam.*, *Gen.* and *Dat. plur.*, final *a* of the stem is lengthened.

deva + nam = devā + nam = devānam.

### 123. Neuter nouns in a (short).

#### SUFFIXES.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. m̐	Nom. ni, a
Gen. ssa	Gen. nam̐
Dat. ssa, āya.	Dat. nam̐
Acc. m̐	Acc. ni, e
Ins. ina	Ins. ehi, ebhi
Abl. { ā, smā mhā, to	Abl. ehi, ebhi
Loc. i, smim̐, mhi	Loc. su
Voc. (like the stem)	Voc. ni, a



124. DECLENSION OF **RŪPA** (NEUTER) FORM.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. rūpaṃ	Nom. rūpāni, rūpā
Gen. rūpassa	Gen. rūpānaṃ
Dat. rūpassa, rūpāya	Dat. rūpānaṃ
Acc. rūpaṃ	Acc. rūpāni, rupe
Ins. rūpena	Ins. rūpehi, rūpebhi
Abl. rūpā rūpasmā rūpamhā rūpato	Abl. rūpehi rūpebhi
Loc. rūpe rūpasmiṃ rūpamhi	Loc. rūpesu
Voc. rūpa	Voc. rūpāni, rūpā.

*Remarks.*—(a) **Ni** is essentially the distinctive sign of Neuter nouns in the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. plur.* in all declensions.

(a) The final vowel of the stem is lengthened before *ni*.

## EXERCISE.

*Decline like rūpa.*

citta, mind	śoṭa, ear
mūla, root, price	veluriya, coral
upaṭṭhāna, service	ahata, cloth (new)
jala, water	osāna, end
loṇa, salt	savana, hearing
vajira, diamond	sāṭaka, garment
vāta, wind	pesana, despatch, sending
yotta, rope	paṭṭana, a sea port
yuddha, fight	pañña, leaf

*Remarks.* (a) It will be noticed that neuter nouns in *a* differ from the masculine in *a*, in the *Nom. sing.* and in the *Nom., Acc. and Voc. plur.*; all the other cases are identical.

(b) In the *plur.* the *Nom., Acc. and Voc.* have the same form.

(c) The form in *āni*, of the *Nom., Acc. and Voc. plur.* is the most common.

### 125. Declension of nouns in *ā* (long).

All nouns ending in *ā* are feminine.

126.

#### SUFFIXES.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. =	ā, yo
Gen. āya	nañ
Dat. āya	nañ
Acc. in	ā, yo
In s. āya	hi, bhi
Abl. āya, to	hi, bhi
Loc. āyañ, āya	su
Voc. e	ā, yo

### 127. DECLENSION OF **KANNĀ** (FEM.) A VIRGIN.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. kaññā	kaññā, kaññāyo
Gen. kaññāya	kaññānañ
Dat. kaññāya	kaññānañ
Acc. kaññāñ	kaññā, kaññāyo

*Singular.**Plural.*

Ins.	kaññāya	kaññāhi, kaññābhi.
Abl.	kaññāya, kaññato	kaññāhi, kaññābhi
Loc.	kaññāyaṃ, kaññāya	kaññāsu
Voc.	kaññā, kaññe	kaññā, kaññāyo

*Remarks.* (a) Before *to* of the *Abl. sing.*, the final vowel, if long, is shortened. So also before *m* of *Acc. sing.*

(b) The following words, all meaning *mother*, have two forms in the *Voc. sing.*:

ammā, ambā, annā, tātā.

*Voc. Sing.* { ammā, ambā, annā, tātā.  
                  { amma, amba, anna, tāta,

(c) In the *Acc. sing.* final ā is shortened.

## EXERCISE.

*Decline like kaññā:*

saddhā, faith	medhā, intelligence
vijjā, science	paññā, wisdom
taṇhā, lust, thirst	mettā, love
icchā, desire	bhikkhā, begged-food
gāthā, stanza	mālā, garland
khiddā, play, sport	pūjā, honour
senā, army	chāyā, shadow
nāvā, boat	pipāsā, thirst
gīvā, throat	velā, time

128. It has been said above (125) that all nouns ending in *ā* are feminine; but there are a very few examples of masculine nouns ending in *ā*. We give below their declension.

**Masculine nouns in *ā* (long.)**

**DECLENSION OF *SĀ*—DOG.**

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>sā</i>	<i>sā</i>
Gen. <i>sassa</i>	<i>sānaṃ</i>
Dat. <i>sassa, sāya</i>	<i>sānaṃ</i>
Acc. <i>saṃ</i>	<i>sāne</i>
Ins. <i>sena</i>	<i>sāhi, sābhi</i>
Abl. <i>sā, sasmā, samhā</i>	<i>sāhi, sābhi</i>
Loc. <i>se, sasmim, samhi</i>	<i>sāsu</i>
Voc. <i>sa</i>	<i>sā</i>

*Remarks.* (a) the declension above given is according to the *Rūpasiddhi*.

(b) The declension given in the *Saddaniti* differs slightly :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>sā</i>	<i>sā, sāno</i>
Gen. <i>sassa</i>	<i>sānaṃ</i>
Dat. <i>sassa</i>	<i>sānaṃ</i>

*Singular.**Plural.*

Acc. sānaṃ

sāne

Ins. sānā

sānehi, sānebhi

Abl. sānā

sānehi, sānebhi

Loc. sāne

sānesu

Voc. sa

sā, sāno

The following are declined like **sā** :

Paccakkhadhammā, one to whom the Doctrine is evident.

Gaṇḍivandhavā, Arjuna.

mā, the moon.

rahā,\* sin.

*Remarks.* Masculine nouns in **ā** belong to the Consonantal declension, but native grammarians consider them as stems ending in a vowel.

## 129. Declension of nouns in **i** (short).

Nouns the stem of which ends in **i** are Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. They do not form a very numerous class.

### Masculine nouns in **i**.

130

### SUFFIXES.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. —

ī, yo

Gen. ssa, no

naṃ

Dat. ssa, no

naṃ

\* *Nirutthirpani*, a scholium on *Moggallānavyākaraṇa*, a grammar held in high esteem in Ceylon and Burma.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Acc. m	ī, yo
Ins. nā	hi, bhi
Abl. nā, smā, mhā	hi, bhi
Loc. smim, mhi	su
Voc. —	ī, yo

131. DECLENSION OF **KAPI** (MASC.)—MONKEY.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. kapi	kapī, kapayo
Gen. kapissa, kapino	kapīnaṃ
Dat. kapissa, kapino	kapīnaṃ
Acc. kapim	kapī, kapayo
Ins. kapinā	kapīhi, kapibhi
Abl. kapinā, kapismā, kapimhā	kapīhi, kapibhi
Loc. kapismim, kapimhi	kapīsu
Voc. kapi	kapī, kapayo

*Remarks.* (a) The *Nom.* and *Voc. sing.* are like the stem.

(b) In the *Nom., Acc.* and *Voc. plur.* final *i* is changed to *a* before suffix *yo*.

(c) However, final *i* is sometimes preserved before *yo*, so that we also have the form **kapiyo** (rare).

(d) In the plural, before suffixes : *nam*, *hi*, *bhi*, *su* final *i* is lengthened.

(e) Some rare and old forms are sometimes found :

- (i) *Gen. sing.* ending in—*e*, as : *mune*
- (ii) *Loc. sing.* „ in—*o*, as : *ādo*, and also
- (iii) „ „ in—*e*, as : *gire*
- (iv) *Ins. sing.* „ in—*ena*, as : *rathsenā*
- (v) *Nom. plur.* „ in—*no*, as : *saramatino*

(f) Not seldom, the stem itself is used for almost all the cases in the *singular*.

### EXERCISE.

*Words declined like kapi (masc.)*

aggi, fire	kali, sin
sandhi, union	nidhi, a depository
sārathi, a charioteer	yati, a monk
añjali, salutation	ari, an enemy
bēndi, body	giri, a mountain
ūmi, a wave	bali, oblation
senāpati, a general	gahapati, householder

**Feminine nouns in i (short).**

132.

### SUFFIXES.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. —	<i>ī</i> , <i>yo</i>
Gen. <i>ā</i>	<i>nam</i>
Dat. <i>ā</i>	<i>nam</i>
Acc. <i>m</i>	<i>ī</i> , <i>yo</i>

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Ins. ā	hi, bhi
Abl. ā	hi, bhi
Loc. ā, aṃ	su
Voc. —	i, yo

133. (a) DECLENSION OF **RATTI** (FEM.)—NIGHT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. ratti	rattī, rattiyo, ratyo
Gen. rattiyā, ratyā	rattinaṃ
Dat. rattiyā, ratyā	rattinaṃ
Acc. rattim.	rattī, rattiyo, ratyo
Ins. rattiyā, ratyā	rattihi, rattibhi
Abl. rattiyā, ratyā	rattihi, rattibhi
Loc. rattiyā, ratyā rattiyaṃ, ratyaṃ	rattisu
Voc. ratti.	rattī, rattiyo, ratyo

*Remarks.* (a) There is an ancient *Loc. sing.* in *o*: *ratto*.

(b) An *Abl. sing* in *to*, is also found: *rattito*.

(c) In the *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Ins.*, *Abl.* and *Loc. sing.* a *y* is inserted between the stem and the suffix *ā* to avoid a hiatus. (See 27 (ii) Remark 2, p. 12); so also in the *Loc. sing.* before *aṃ*.



(d) Before ā, of the same cases, final *i* of the stem may become *y* by rule 27 (i), *a*; and as in Pāli there can be no group of three consonants\* one *t* is dropped. Hence we get :

ratti + ā = rattyā = ratyā.

(e) Before suffixes, *nam*, *hi*, *bhi*, *su* of the plural, the *i* of the stem is lengthened.

(b) DECLENSION OF **JĀTI** (FEM.)—BIRTH.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	jāti	jāti, jātiyo, jatyo, jacco
Gen	jātiyā, jatyā, jaccā	jātīnam
Dat.	jātiyā, jatyā, jaccā	jātīnam
Acc.	jātim	jāti, jātiyo, jatyo, jacco
Ins.	jātiyā, jatyā, jaccā	jātīhi, jātibhi
Abl.	jātiyā, jatyā, jaccā	jātīhi, jātibhi
Loc.	jātiyā, jatyā, jaccā jātiyam, jatyam, jaccam,	jātīsu
Voc.	jāti	jāti, jātiyo, jatyo, jacco

*Remarks.* (a) For the forms, jaccā and jaccānī see rule 74.

(b) Jacco is obtained by the assimilation of *y* after the elision of final *i* (71, 74).

---

\*Except *nir*, as in *antra*, etc.

(c) It will be remarked that, whereas in Masc. nouns in *i* the *i* of the stem is changed to *a* before *yo*; in Fem. nouns it is retained.

## EXERCISE.

*Nouns declined like ratti (fem).*

bhūmi, earth	keḷi, amusement
satti, ability	nandi, joy
patti, attainment	mati, understanding
tuṭṭhi, satisfaction	mutti, deliverance
āsatti, attachment	vuddhi, increase
dhūli, dust	ruci, splendour
tanti, a string	chavi, the skin
gati, going, rebirth	cuti, disappearance
sati, recollection	diṭṭhi, sight, belief

---

**Neuter Nouns in i (short).**

134

## SUFFIXES.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	—	ni, ī
Gen.	ssa, no	naṃ
Dat.	ssa, no	naṃ
Acc.	m	ni, ī
Ins.	nā	hi, bhi
Abl.	nā, smā, mhā	hi, bhi
Loc.	smim, mhi	su
Voc.	—	ni, ī

DECLENSION OF **VĀRI** (NEUT.)—WATER.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	vāri	vārīni, vārī
Gem.	vārissa, vārino	vārīnam
Dat.	vārissa, vārino	vārīnam
Acc.	vārīm	vārīni, vārī
Ins.	vārīnā	vārīhi, vārībhi
Abl.	vārīnā, vārismā vārmihā	vārīhi, vārībhi
Loc.	vārismīm, vārīmhi	vārīsu
Voc.	vāri	vārīni, vārī

*Remarks.* (a) There is also found a *Nom. sing.* in *ī* like the *Acc.*, as aṭṭhīm, bone; akkhiṃ eye, etc.

(b) As usual, final *i* is lengthened before *ni*, *nam*, *hi*, *bhi* and *su* in the plural.

## EXERCISE.

*Decline like vāri (neut).*

aṭṭhi, bone	satthi, the thigh
akkhi, eye	dadhi, milk curds
sappi, ghee	acchi, eye
chādi, roof	rūpi, silver

135 Declensions of Nouns in *ī* (long.)

There are no Neuter nouns ending in *ī* (long).

**Masculine Nouns in ī (long).**

136

**SUFFIXES.**

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	ī	ī, no
Gen.	ssa, no	naṃ
Dat.	ssa, no	naṃ
Acc.	m, naṃ	ī, no
Ins.	nā	hi, bhi
Abl.	nā, smā, mhā	hi, bhi
Loc.	smim, mhi	su
Voc.	ī	ī, no

**DECLENSION OF DANDĪ (MASC.)—MENDICANT.**

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	daṇḍī	daṇḍī, daṇḍino
Gen.	daṇḍissa, daṇḍino	daṇḍinaṃ
Dat.	daṇḍissa, daṇḍino	daṇḍinaṃ
Acc.	daṇḍim, daṇḍinaṃ	daṇḍī, daṇḍino
Ins.	daṇḍinā	daṇḍīhi, daṇḍībhi
Abl.	daṇḍinā, daṇḍismā	daṇḍīhi, daṇḍībhi
Loc.	daṇḍismim, daṇḍimhi	daṇḍīsu
Voc.	daṇḍī	daṇḍī, daṇḍino

*Remarks.* (a) A *Nom. sing.* in *i* (short) is sometimes met with : daṇḍi.

(b) *Voc. sing.* in *ni* is also found: daṇḍini.

(c) Note that in all the oblique cases of the singular the final *i* of the stem is shortened before the suffixes.

(d) In the *Nom. plur.* a rare form in *yo* is found formed on the analogy of *Masc. in i* (short); as daṇḍiyo.

(e) An *Acc. plur.* in *ye* is occasionally met with : *daṇḍiye*.

(f) It should be noticed that before *no* of the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. plur.*, *ī* of the base is shortened.

(g) An *Acc. sing.* in *aṃ* with the semi-vowel *y* developed before it is met with : *daṇḍiyaṃ*.

(h) An *Abl. sing.* in *to* is found pretty frequently : *daṇḍito*.

### EXERCISE.

*Decline like daṇḍī (masc.).*

sāmī, lord.	senānī, a general.
kapaṇī, pauper.	sakkhī, a witness,
mantī, minister.	yoddhī, warrior.

137. Most Masc. nouns in *ī* are not pure substantives, they are adjectives used substantively; their true stem is in *in*, the *Nom. sing.* being *ī*. The true stem of *daṇḍī* therefore is *daṇḍin*. Properly, all these words belong to the consonantal declension.

### Feminine Nouns in *ī* (long.)

138.

#### SUFFIXES.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>ī</i>	<i>ī, yo</i>
Gen.	<i>ā</i>	<i>naṃ</i>
Dat.	<i>ā</i>	<i>naṃ</i>
Acc.	<i>m</i>	<i>ī, yo</i>
Ins.	<i>ā</i>	<i>hi, bhi</i>
Abl.	<i>ā</i>	<i>hi, bhi</i>
Loc.	<i>a, aṃ</i>	<i>su</i>
Voc.	<i>ī</i>	<i>ī, yo</i>

130.      DECLENSION OF **NADĪ** (FEM.)—RIVER.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.    nadī	nadī, nadiyo, najjo
Gen.    nadiyā, nadyā, najjā	nadinam
Dat.    nadiyā, nadyā, najjā	nadinam
Acc.    nadim	nadī, nadiyo, najjo
Ins.    nadiyā, nadyā, najjā	nadihi, nadibhi
Abl.    nadiyā, nadyā, najjā	nadihi, nadibhi
Loc.    nadiyā, nadyā, najjā nadiyam, nadyam najjam	nadisū
Voc.    nadī	nadī, nadiyo, najjo

*Remarks.* (a) There is a *Gen. plur.* in *ānam*, *nadiyānam*.

(b) In all the oblique cases of the sing., final *i* of the base is shortened; also before *yo* in the plural.

(c) For insertion of *y* before suffixes beginning with a vowel, see 27, Remark 2, p. 12.

(d) For the forms *nadyā*, *najjā* and *najjam*, see Rules 71, 74.

(e) In the form *najjo*, *yo* is assimilated after the elision of final *i*,

## EXERCISE.

*Decline like nadī (fem.)*

paṭī, canvas	Bārāṇasī, Benares
lakkhī, prosperity	rājini, queen
sīhī, lioness	ḍabbī, spoon
pāṭī, bowl	bhisī, mat
kumārī, girl	sakhī, a female friend

brāhmaṇī, a brahmin.	taruṇī, young woman
woman	
bhikkhunī, nun	kākī, a female crow
vānarī, ape	mahī, the earth
yakkhī, ogress	migī, a doe
devī, nymph	vāpī, a reservoir, tank

### Declension of Nouns in u (short).

140. The nouns ending in **u** (short), are either Masculine, Feminine or Neuter.

### Masculine Nouns in u (short).

#### 141. SUFFIXES.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	—	ū, o
Gen.	ssa, no	naṁ
Dat.	ssa, no	naṁ
Acc.	ṁ	ū, o
Ins.	nā	hi, bhi
Abl.	nā, smā, mahā	hi, bhi
Loc.	smim, mhi	su
Voc.	—	ū, o, e

### DECLENSION OF **BHIKKHU** (MASC.)—MONK.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	bhikkhu	bhikkhū, bhikkhavo
Gen.	bhikkhussa	bhikkhūnaṁ
	bhikkhuno	
Dat.	bhikkhussa	bhikkhūnaṁ
	bhikkhuno	
Acc.	bhikkhum	bhikkhū, bhikkhavo
Ins.	bhikkhunā	bhikkhūhi
		bhikkhūbhi

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Abl.	bhikkhunā bhikkhusmā bhikkhumhā	bhikkhūhi bhikkhūbhi
Loc.	bhikkhusmiṃ bhikkhumhi	bhikkhūsu
Voc.	bhikkhu.	bhikkhū, bhikkhavo, bhikkhave

*Remarks.* (a) A *Nom.* and an *Acc. plural* in *yo* are sometimes met with in some words: *jantuyo*, *hetuyo*.

(b) Before suffixes *o* and *e*, in the plural, *u* of the stem or base is strengthened and becomes *au* (27 (ii) a).

## EXERCISE.

*Nouns declined like bhikku (masc.)*

pasu, goat	velu, bamboo
bandhu, relative	bhāṇu, the sun
macchu, death	uccu, sugar-cane
bāhu, arm	setu, bridge
ketu, flag	katu, sacrifice
pharasu, axe	ruru, a deer
taru, tree	hetu, cause

## Feminine Nouns in u (short).

142.

## SUFFIXES.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> —	ū, yo.
<i>Gen.</i> yā.	naṃ.



<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat. yā	naṁ
Acc. m̐	ū, yo
Ins. yā	hi, bhi
Abl. yā	hi, bhi
Loc. yaṁ, yā	su
Voc. —	ū, yo

143. DECLENSION OF **DHENU** (FEM.)—COW.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. dhenu	dhenū, dhenuyo
Gen. dhenuyā	dhenūnaṁ
Dat. dhenuyā	dhenūnaṁ
Acc. dhenur̐	dhenū, dhenuyo
Ins. dhenuyā	dhenūhi, dhenūbhi
Abl. dhenuyā	dhenūhi, dhenūbhi
Loc. dhenuyāṁ, dhenuyā	dhenūsu.
Voc. dhenu	dhenū, dhenuyo

*Remarks.* (a) An Abl. sing. in *to* is common: dhenuto, jambuto.

(b) A Nom. plur. in *o* occurs without strengthening of final *u*, but with insertion of *v*: dhenuvo.

(c) Final *u* is, in the plural, lengthened before *naṁ*, *hi*, *bhi*, and *su*.

## EXERCISE.

*Decline like dhenu.*

dhātu, an element	yāgu, rice gruel
rajjū, string	kareṇu, elephant
ku, the earth	hanu, jaw
daddu, ringworm	vaṇṇu, sand
kāsu, a hole, pit	kaṇḍu, itch
kacchu, scab	piyaṅgu, a medicinal plant
natthu, nose	vijju, lightning

**Neuter Nouns in u (short).**

144.

**SUFFIXES.***Singular.**Plural.*

(like the masculine)

*Nom., Acc., Voc. ū, ni*  
*(The rest like the Masc).*

145. **DECLENSION OF CAKKHU (NEUT.)—EYE.***Singular.**Plural.*

Nom.	cakkhu	cakkhūni, cakkhū
Gen.	cakkhussa cakkhuno	cakkhūnaṃ
Dat.	cakkhussa cakkhuno	cakkhūnaṃ.
Acc.	cakkhum	cakkhūni, cakkhū
Ins.	cakkhunā	cakkhūhi, cakkhūbhi
Abl.	cakkhunā cakkhusmā cakkhumhā	cakkhūhi, cakkhūbhi
Loc.	cakkhusmiṃ cakkhumhi	cakkhūsu
Voc.	cakkhu	cakkhūni, cakkhū

*Remarks.* There is a form of the *Nom. sing.* in *m*:  
 cakkhum.

## EXERCISES.

*Words declined like cakkhu (neut).*

dhanu, a bow	ambu, water
dāru, wood	aru, a wound
madhu, honey	janu, the knee
massu, the beard	vatthu, a story
matthu, whey	āyu, age
assu, a tear	vasu, wealth

146. **Declension of Nouns in ū (long).**

(a) This declension includes Masculine and Feminine nouns only.

(b) The Suffixes are much the same as those of the **u** (short) declension, and present no difficulty.

147. **DECLENSION OF SAYAMBHŪ (MASC.) AN  
EPITHET OF BUDDHA.**

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

Nom.	sayambhū	sayambhū, sayambhuvo
Gen.	sayambhussa sayambhuno	sayambbhūnaṃ
Dat.	sayambhussa sayambhuno	sayambbhūnaṃ
Acc.	sayambhum	sayambhū, sayambhuvo
Ins.	sayambhunā	sayambbhūhi, sayambbhūbhi
Abī.	sayambhunā, sayambhusmā, sayambhumhā	sayambbhūhi, sayambbhūbhi

*Singular.*                      *Plural.*

Loc.	sayambhusmiṃ, sayambhumhi	sayambhūsu
Voc.	sayambhū	sayambhū, sayambhuvo

*Remarks.* (a) In the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. plur.*, *v* is inserted between the suffix *o* and the stem after the shortening of *ū*.

(b) Final *ū* of the stem is shortened to *u* in the oblique cases of the singular.

148. DECLENSION OF **VADHŪ** (FEM.) A WIDOW.

*Singular.*                      *Plural.*

Nom.	vadhū.	vadhū, vadhuyo.
Gen.	vadhuyā	vadhūnaṃ
Dat.	vadhuyā	vadhūnaṃ
Acc.	vadhuṃ	vadhū, vadhuyo
Ins.	vadhuyā	vadhūhi, vadhūbhi
Abl.	vadhuyā	vadhūhi, vadhūbhi
Loc.	vadhuyā vadhuyam	vadhūsū
Voc.	vadhū	vadhū, vadhuyo.

*Remarks.* (a) As in the *Masc.*, final *ū* is shortened in the oblique cases of the sing.

(b) A form in *to* is also found in the *Abl. sing.*? *vadhuto*.

(c) In the plural, before *yo*, final *ū* is shortened.

**Stems ending in a diphthong.**

149. All diphthongal stems have disappeared in Pāli; only one such stem remains, it is the word *go*, a cow.

**SPECIAL NOUNS.**

150. (I) DECLENSION OF **GO** (DIPHTHONGAL STEM)—  
A COW.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	go	gavo, gāvo
Gen.	gavassa, gāvassa	gavaṃ, gonaṃ gunnaṃ
Dat.	gavassa, gāvassa	gavaṃ, gonaṃ gunnaṃ
Acc.	gavaṃ, gāvaṃ gavunṃ, gāvunṃ	gavo, gāvo
Ins.	gavena, gāvena	gohi, gobhi, gavehi
Abl.	gavā, gāvā gavasmā, gāvasmā, gavamhā, gāvamhā	gohi, gobhi, gavehi
Loc.	gave, gāve gavasmim, gāvasmim gavamhi, gāvamhi	gosu, gavesu, gāvesu
Voc.	go	gavo, gāvo

151. (II) DECLENSION OF **SAKHĀ**, FRIEND.  
(SANSK. SAKHI.)

(the stem is irregular.)

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	sakhā	sakhāyo sakhāno sakhino sakhā

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	sakhino sakhissa	sakhārānaṃ sakhīnaṃ sakhānaṃ
<b>Dat.</b>	sakhino sakhissa	sakhārānaṃ sakhīnaṃ rakhānaṃ
<b>Acc.</b>	sakhānaṃ sakhaṃ sakhāraṃ	sakhī sakhāyo sakhāno sakhino
<b>Ins.</b>	sakhinā	sakhārehi sakhārebhi sakhehi sakhebhi
<b>Abl.</b>	sakhinā sakhārā sakharasmā	sakhārehi sakhārebhi sakhehi sakhebhi
<b>Loc.</b>	sakhe	sakhāresu sakhesu
<b>Voc.</b>	sakha sakhā sakhī sakhī sakhe	sakhāyo sakhāno sakhino sakhā

*Remarks.* The student will perceive that *sakhā* has forms belonging to stems in *ar* and others to stems in *in* (see Consonantal Declension).

## 152. CONSONANTAL DECLENSION.

(a) The Consonantal Declension includes all nouns and adjectives whose *stem ends in a consonant*.

(b) Nouns, the stem of which ends in a consonant, are rather few and special, the majority of the words included in this declension being adjectives ending in *vat* or *mat*, and all words ending in a nasal (*n*) being considered as belonging to the Vowel Declension, by native grammarians.

(c) Most of the words of the Consonantal Declension seem to follow *two declensions*; some suffixes belong to the vowel, and others to the Consonantal Declension.

153. (1) **Stem ending in a nasal (n).**

154. **DECLENSION OF ATTĀ, (STEM ATTAN)—SELF.**

(Stem in *an*.)

MASCULINE.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	attā	attāno, attā
Gen.	attano, attassa	attānaṃ
Dat.	attano, attassa	attānaṃ
Acc.	attānaṃ, attara attanaṃ	attāno, atte
Ins.	attanā, attena	attanehi, attānebhī
Abl.	attanā, attasmā attamhā	attanehi, attānebhī
Loc.	attani, attasmim attamhi	attanesu
Voc.	atta, attā	attāno, attā

Like attā (stem : attan) are declined,—

ātumā, self

muddhā, head.

asmā, stone

addhā, road, distance, time.

155. DECLENSION OF **BRAHMĀ** (STEM BBAHMAN).  
"BRAHMA."

MASCULINE.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

Nom. brahmā

brahmāno

brahmā

Gen. brahmuno  
brahmassa

brahmānaṃ  
brahmunāṃ

Dat. brahmuno  
brahmassa

brahmānaṃ  
brahmunāṃ

Acc. brahmānaṃ  
brahmaṃ

brahmāno

Ins. brahmanā  
brahmunā

brahmehi, brahmebhi  
brahmūhi, brahmūbhi

Abl. brahmanā  
brahmunā

brahmehi, brahmebhi  
brahmūhi, brahmūbhi

Loc. brahme  
brahmani

brahmesu

Voc. brahme

brahmāno, brahmā.

(a) In the *Loc. sing.* we meet with the forms *in* smīṃ, mhi: brahmāsmīṃ, brahmamhi



## 156. DECLENSION OF RĀJĀ (STEM RĀJAN)—A KING.

## MASCULINE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	rājā	rājāno, rājā
Gen.	rañño rājino rājassa	raññaṃ rajūnaṃ rājānaṃ
Dat.	rañño rājino rājassa	raññaṃ rajūnaṃ rājānaṃ
Acc.	rājānaṃ rājaṃ	rājāno
Ins.	rañña, rājena rājina	rājūhi, rajūbhi rājehi; rājebhi
Abl.	rañña rājasma rājamhā	rājūhi, rajūbhi rājehi, rājebhi
Loc.	raññe, raññi rājini, rājimhi rājismiṃ	rājūsu rājesu
Voc.	rāja rājā	rājāno, rājā

*Remarks.* (a) When the word rājā is used by itself in a sentence, it follows the above declension; but when it forms the last part of a compound as for instance in : dhammarājā, mahārājā, etc., it follows the declension of masculine nouns in *a*, like deva.

(b) The forms of the plural seem to point to a base or stem in *u* : *rāju*.

(c) A few nouns, the stem of which ends in *an*, follow the *a* declension of Masc. nouns like *deva*; they are :

*vissakamma*, the architect of the gods.

*vivattacchaddo*, He by whom the veil (of ignorance) is rolled back (from this world).

*puthuloma*, a fish; *yakana*, the liver.

*Athabbana*, the fourth veda.

and some others.

# 157. DECLENSION ON PUMĀ (STEM PUMAN)—A MAN.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>pumā</i>	<i>pumāno</i> <i>pumā.</i>
Gen.	<i>pumuno</i> <i>pumassa</i>	<i>pumānaṃ</i>
Dat.	<i>pumuno</i> <i>pumassa</i>	<i>pumānaṃ</i>
Acc.	<i>pumānaṃ</i> <i>pumaṃ</i>	<i>pumāno</i> <i>pume</i>
Ins.	<i>pumānā</i> <i>pumunā</i> <i>pumena</i>	<i>pumānehi</i> <i>pumānebhi</i> <i>pumehi</i> <i>pumebhi</i>

Abl.	pumunā	pumānehi
	pumānā	pumānebhi
	pumā	pumehi
	pumasmā	pumebhi
	pumamhā	
Loc.	pumāne	pumānesu
	punie	pumāsu
	pumasminā	pumesu
	pumamhi	
Voc.	pumam	pumāno
	puma	pumā

*Remarks.* (a) The influence of the *a* declension, Masculine, is clearly discernible throughout.

(b) The word *sā* a dog, given at 128, properly belongs to this declension; this gives the stem, *sa-*, from Sanskrit *Cvan*.

The declension of nouns, the stem of which ends in *in*, has already been given (136); these words, declined like *daṇḍī* (stem *daṇḍin*), and rather numerous, form the transition between the pure vowel declension and the declension of consonantal-stems.

158.

(ii) **Stems ending in s.**159. **DECLENSION OF MANO (STEM MANAS).**

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	mano manam	manā
Gen.	manaso manassa	manānam

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	manaso manassa	manānaṃ
Acc.	mano manam	mane
Ins.	manasā manena	manehi manebhi
Abl.	manasā manasmā manambhā manā	manehi manebhi
Loc.	manasi mane manasmim manamhi	manesu
Voc.	mano manam manā mana	manā

*Remarks.* (a) It should be borne in mind that *mano* is *never* used in the plural, although the forms are given by some grammarians.

(b) The influence of the *a* declension is here also clearly seen, principally in the plural, of which, in fact, all the forms are after the *a* declension.

(c) There is also a neuter form in *ni* in the plural: *manāni*.

160. Native grammarians give the following nouns as belonging to the *manas* declension, their stems ending in *as* :—

vaco, discourse	tejo, power
vayo, age	tapo, heat
ceto, thought	tamo, darkness
yaso, glory, fame	ayo, iron
payo, a beverage	sīro, the head
chando, metrics,	saro, a lake
prosody	raho, solitude, privacy
uro, breast	rajo, dust; passion
aho, day	thāmo, strength; vigour
ojo, splendour,	vāso, cloth, clothing.
strength	

*Remarks.* (a) *aha*, day, in the *Loc. sing.* has the six following forms: *ahasmim*, *ahamhi*, *ahe*, *ahu*, *ahasi*, *ahuni*.

(b) The words: *rajo*, *ojo*, *thāmo* and *vāso*, are included in the *manas* declension by the Sinhalese grammarians.

(c) The comparative adjectives ending in *yo*, *iyyo*, as for instance *seyyo*, *gariyo*, follow the *manas* declension.

#### 161. DECLENSION OF **ĀYU** (STEM **ĀYUSI**)—LIFE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	āyu āyūṃ	āyū āyūni
Gen.	āyussa āyuno	āyūnaṃ āyusaṃ
Dat.	āyussa āyuno	āyūnaṃ āyusaṃ
Acc.	āyu āyūṃ	āyū āyūni

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Ins.	āyunā āyusā	āyūhi āyūbhi
Abl.	āyunā āyusā	āyūhi āyūbhi
Loc.	āyuni āyusi	āyūsu
Voc.	āyu āyuh	āyū āyūni

162. III. Stems ending in ar (-SANSK r)

163. DECLENSION OF **SATTHĀ** (STEM SATTHAR, SANSK CASTR.)

THE TEACHER (BUDDHA).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	satthā	satthāro satthā
Gen.	satthu satthussa satthuno	satthānaṃ satthārānaṃ satthūnaṃ
Dat.	satthu satthussa satthuno	satthānaṃ satthārānaṃ satthūnaṃ
Acc.	satthāraṃ sattharaṃ	satthāro satthāre
Ins.	sattharā satthārā satthunā	satthārehi satthārebhi
Abl.	sattharā satthārā satthunā	satthārehi satthārebhi
Loc.	satthari	satthāresu satthūsu
Voc.	sattha satthā	satthāro satthā

*Remarks.* (a) The form of the *Gen. sing.* in *u* *satthu*, is the base employed in the formation of compound words.

(b) Stems ending in *ar* (Sansk. *r*) have their *Nom. sing.* in *ā* as *pitar* (=Sansk *pitṛ*), *Nom. sing.* *pitā*; so *mātar* (=mātr), *Nom. sing.* *mātā*. Their base in composition is generally in *u*.

(c) Before suffix *to* of the *Abl. sing.* stems in *ar* often take the vowel *i*; as *pitito*, *mātito*, and sometimes a base *piti*, *māti* is used in composition: *pitipakkhe*.

(d) Some words whose stem is in *ar*, follow the *a* declension (of *deva*), for instance: *sallakatta* (stem *sallakattar*), a physician; *kattara* (stem *kattarar*), a weak person; *sota* (stem *sotar*), a hearer.

*Decline like satthā*

<i>netā</i> , a guide	<i>nattā</i> , a grandson
<i>mātā</i> , mother,	<i>pitā</i> , father
<i>jetā</i> , a conqueror	<i>dātā</i> , a giver
<i>kattā</i> , an agent	<i>bhātā</i> , brother

The words *pitā* and *mātā* present some peculiarities

164. DECLENSION OF **MĀTĀ** (STEM **MĀTAR**) (SANSK. **MĀTR**)—MOTHER.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>mātā</i>	<i>mātarō</i> <i>mātā</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>mātu</i> <i>mātuyā</i> <i>mātyā</i>	<i>mātarānaṃ</i> <i>mātānaṃ</i> <i>mātūnaṃ</i> <i>mātunnaṃ</i>

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	mātu mātuyā mātyā	mātarānaṃ mātānaṃ mātūnaṃ mātunnaṃ
Acc.	mātaraṃ	mātaro mātare
Ins.	mātarā mātuyā mātyā	mātarehi mātarebhi mātūhi mātūbhi
Abl.	mātarā mātuyā mātyā	mātarehi mātarebhi mātūhi mātūbhi
Loc.	māṭari mātuyā mātyā mātuyaṃ mātyaṃ	mātaresu mātūsu
Voc.	māta mātā	mātaro mātā

*Remarks.* (a) In the oblique cases of the singular, the student will readily recognize the influence of the Feminine declension in the suffixes *ā* and *ṃ*.

(b) There is also found, rarely, a *Gen. sing.* in *ssa*: *mātussa*.

#### DECLENSION OF **PITĀ**, (STEM PITAR) (SANSK, Pitr), FATHER.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	pitā	pitaro
Gen.	pitu pituno pitussa	pitarānaṃ pitānaṃ pitūnaṃ pitunnaṃ



	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	pitu pituno pitussa	pitarānaṃ pitānaṃ pitūnaṃ pitunnaṃ
Acc.	pitaraṃ pituṃ	pitaro pitare
Ins.	pitarā pitunā pityā petya	pitarehi pitarebhi pitūhi pitūbhi
Abl.	pitarā pitu pityā petyā	pitarehi pitarebhi pitūhi pitūbhi
Loc.	pitari	pitaresu pitūsu
Voc.	pita pitā	pitaro

*Remarks.* In the *Dat.* and *Gen. plur.* of *mātā* and *pitā*, the *n* is doubled to compensate for the shortening of *ū* (long); hence: *mātunnaṃ*, *mātūnaṃ* and *pitunnaṃ*, *pitūnaṃ*.

165. The words ending in :

at (or ant)

vat (or vant)

mat (or mant,) are mostly *adjectives*

and their declension will be given in the chapter on *Adjectives*.

We shall, however, give here the declension of a few **nouns**, in *at* or *vant*.

166.      **DECLENSION OF BHAVAM—SIR.**Stem in at (*or ant.*)

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. bhavam bhanto	bhavanto bhavantā bhonto
Gen. bhavantassa bhavato bhoto	bhavataṃ bhavantānaṃ
Dat. bhavantassa bhavato bhoto	bhavataṃ bhavantānaṃ
Acc. bhavantaṃ bhotaṃ	bhavante bhonte
Ins. bhavantena bhavatā bhotā	bhavantehi bhavantebhi
Abl. bhavatā bhavantā bhotā	bhavantehi bhavantebhi
Loc. bhavati bhavante	bhavantesu
Voc. bho bhonta bhante	bhavanto bhonto bhante bhavantā

*Remarks.* (a) Bhavaṃ is a polite term of address, and may be translated by "Your Honour."

(b) Native grammarians invariably use it as the sign of the Vocative case.

(c) The feminine, bhotī, "madam" is regularly declined after the ī declension feminine, (*nadī*)

# 167      DECLENSION OF **ARAHAM**, A SAINT.

Stem in at (*or ant.*)

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	araham arahā	arahanto arahā
Gen.	arahato arahantassa	arahataṃ arahantānaṃ
Dat.	arahato arahantassa	arahataṃ arahantānaṃ
Acc.	arahantaṃ	arahante
Ins.	arahatā arahantena	arahantehi arahantebhi
Abl.	arahatā arahantā arahantasmā arahantamhā	arahantehi arahantebhi
Loc.	arahati arahante arahantasmim arahantamhi	arahantesu
Voc.	arahanta	arahanto

Similarly is declined *santa*, meaning—a good man.

## CHAPTER VI.\*

## FORMATION OF FEMININE BASES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

168. From what has been already said (116, d) about *grammatical gender*, it will be easily understood that the gender of *substantives* will be better learned from the dictionary. The student will already have remarked, however, that :

169. All nouns the stem of which ends in *a*, and the *Nom. sing.* in *o*, are Masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

*Stem.**Nom. sing. Masc.*

sīha, lion

sīho

assa, horse

asso

hattha, the hand

hattho

dāra, wife

dāro

170. All nouns the stem of which ends in *a*, and the *Nom. sing.* in *aṃ*, are Neuter.

## EXAMPLES.

*Stem.**Nom. sing. Neuter.*

citta, the mind

cittaṃ

rūpa, an image

rūpaṃ

bhatta, rice

bhattaṃ

hita, benefit

hitaṃ

bhaya, fear

bhayaṃ

\* This chapter has for the most part been adapted from the *Nirutthidīpanī*.

171. All nouns the stem of which ends in *ā*, and the *Nom. sing.* in *ā*, are Feminine.

### EXAMPLES.

Stem.	<i>Nom. sing. Fem.</i>
vācā, a word	vācā
nāvā, a boat	nāvā
sālā, a hall	sālā
gāthā, a stanza	gāthā
pūjā, worship	pūjā

*Remarks.* The Masculine nouns with stems in *ā*, (128), very few in number, are rarely met with. Although included by all native grammarians, as has already been remarked, in the Vowel-declension, they properly belong to the Consonantal-declension. For instance, the true stem of *sā*, a dog, is *san* (Sanskrit *Cvan*); that of *mā*, the moon, is *mas* (Sansk. *mās*); again, the true stem of *gaṇḍivadhanva*, Arjuna, is *gaṇḍivadhanvan*.

172. All nouns whose stem ends in *ī* and the *Nom. sing.* also in *ī* are Feminine.

### EXAMPLES.

Stem.	<i>Nom. sing. Fem.</i>
mahī, the earth	mahī
sīhī, lioness	sīhī
bhisī, a mat	bhisī
rājini, a queen	rājini
bhūmī, the earth	bhūmī

173. There are also some Masculine nouns whose *Nom. sing.* ends in *ī*. As a general rule, the Masc. nouns of this class are *adjectives* used substantively; they properly belong to the Consonantal-declension, and their stem ends in *ni*.

174. There are no Neuter nouns in *ī*.

175. Nouns the stem of which ends in *u*, are either Masculine, Feminine or Neuter. The gender is best learned from the dictionary.

175. All pure substantives whose stem ends in *ū* and the *Nom. sing.* also in *ū* are Feminine.

## EXAMPLES.

Stem.	<i>Nom. sing. Fem.</i>
camū, an army	camū
pādū, a shoe	pādū
sassū, a mother-in-law	sassū
bhū, the earth	bhū
vadhū, daughter-in-law	vadhū

*Remarks.* This class is not numerous.

177. Masculine nouns the stem of which ends in *u* and the *Nom. sing.* in *ū*, are properly not pure substantives, but *adjectives, sometimes used substantively.*

## EXAMPLES.

Stem	Adjective.	Substantival use.	<i>Nom. sing.</i> Masc.
abhibhū, mastering		chief, conqueror,	abhibhū
vedagū, knowing the vedas		a sage, a savant,	vedagū
maggāññū, knowing the Way		a saint	maggāññū

178. There are no Neuter nouns the stem of which ends in *ū*.

179. The above rules, though meagre, will somewhat help the student to discriminate the gender of nouns.

180. As in other languages, many feminine substantives are derived from the base or stem of Masculine substantives by means of certain suffixes.

181. The suffixes used in Pāli to form feminine bases are :

(1) ā, ikā, akā

(2) ī, ikinī

(3) nī, inī

(4) ānī

## 182. FEMININE BASES OF SUBSTANTIVES.

183. Many Feminine bases are derived from Masculine ones ending in *a* by means of ā and ī.

## 184. EXAMPLES WITH Ā

*Remarks.* Feminine bases formed with ā are not very numerous, and most of them can also be formed with inī or ikā.

*Masc. base.*

*Fem. base.*

mānusa, a man

mānusā, a woman

assā, a horse

assā, a mare

kumbhakāra, a potter

kumbhakārā, a potter's wife

kaṭapūtana, a demon

kaṭapūtana, a she-demon

vallabha, a favourite

vallabhā, a favourite woman

## EXAMPLES WITH Ī.

185. *Remarks.* Feminine bases derived from the Masculine by means of ī are very numerous.

*Masc. base.*

*Fem. base.*

siha, lion.

sihī, lioness.

migā, deer.

migī, doe.

kumāra, boy, prince.

kumārī, girl, princess.

māṇava, a young man.

māṇavī, a young woman.

sāmaṇera, a novice.

sāmaṇerī, a novice (fem.)

186. The Feminine of many patronymics is also formed by means of *i*.

<i>Masc. base.</i>	<i>Fem. base.</i>
Kacchāyana	Kacchāyanī
Vāsetṭha	Vāsetṭhī
Gotama	Gotamī

187. Nouns in *ka* (mostly adjectives used substantively) form their Feminine in *ikā* or *ikinī*.

<i>Masc. base.</i>	<i>Fem. base.</i>
Nāvika, a boatman	nāvikā, nāvikinī
paribbājaka, a wandering ascetic	paribbājikā, paribbājikinī
pamsukūlika, a monk wearing robes made of picked-up rags	pamsukūlikinī, pamsukūlikā, a nun wearing, etc.
kumāraka, a boy	kumārikā, a girl

#### 188                      EXAMPLES WITH **INI**.

<i>Masc. base.</i>	<i>Fem. base.</i>
rājā, king	rājinī, queen
kumbhakāra, potter	kumbhakārinī, potter's wife
miga, deer	miginī, doe
sīha, lion	sīhinī, lioness
yakkha, an ogre	yakkhinī, an ogress

#### 189                      EXAMPLES WITH **Ō**.

*Remarks.* The suffix *nī* is used after masculine bases ending in *i*, *ī* and *u*, *ū*. The *ī* and *ū* of the base are shortened before *nī*.



<i>Masc. base.</i>	<i>Fem. base.</i>
bhikkhu, Buddhist monk	bhikkhunī, Buddhist nun
bandhu, a relative	bandhunī, a female relative
paṭu, a wise man	paṭunī, a wise woman
dhammaññū, a pious man	dhammaññunī, a pious woman
daṇḍi, a mendicant	daṇḍinī, a female mendicant
brahmacārī, one who lives the higher life; a religious student	brahmacārinī, a woman who lives, etc.
hatthi, an elephant	hatthinī, female elephant

# 190                      EXAMPLES WITH **ĀNĪ**.

191. A few nouns form their Feminine by means of the suffix *ānī*.

<i>Masc. base.</i>	<i>Fem. base.</i>
mātula, uncle	mātulānī, aunt
vāruṇa, Varuṇa	varuṇānī
khattiya, a nobleman	khattiyānī, a noblewoman
ācariya, teacher	ācariyānī
gahapati, householder	gahapātānī, household-er's wife

*Remarks.* Note that in *gahapati*, final *i* is dropped before *ānī*.

192. Some nouns assume two or more Feminine forms.

## EXAMPLES.

*Masc. base.**Fem. base.*

atthakāma, one wishing to be useful	atthakāmā, atthakāmī, atthakāminī
kumbhakāra, potter	kumbhakārā, kumbha- kāri, kumbhakārinī
yakkha, ogre	yakkhī, yakkhinī
nāga, snake, elephant	nāgī, nāginī
miga, deer	migī, miginī
sīha, lion	sīhī, sīhinī
byaggha, tiger	byagghī, byagghinī
kāka, a crow	kākī, kākini
mānusa, a man	mānūsā, mānusi, mānusinī

193. The suffixes used for the formation of Adjectival Feminine bases are the same as those given above (181) that is :—

194. Of Adjectives the stem of which ends in *a*, some form their Feminine in *ā*, some in *ī*.

195. Adjectives ending in *i*, *ī*, and *u*, *ū*, form their Feminine by adding *nī* (189), before which long *ī* and *ū* are shortened.

(For examples see Chapter VII, *Adjectives*.)

## CHAPTER VII.

## ADJECTIVES.

## DECLENSION.

196. Adjectives, like nouns, may be divided into those whose stem ends in a vowel and those the stem of which ends in a consonant.

To the student who has mastered the declension of nouns, that of adjectives will present no difficulties.

*Declension of Adjectives in a.*

197. Adjectives in *a* form their Feminine by means of *ā* mostly; some by means of *ī*.

198. The Neuter is obtained by adding *m̐* to the stem..

199. The Masculine is declined like *deva* (122), the Feminine like *kaññā* (127) and the Neuter like *rūpaṃ* (124).

*Feminines in ī are declined like nadī* (139).

200. DECLENSION OF **BĀLA** (STEM), FOOLISH.*Singular.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	bālo	bālā	bālaṃ
Gen.	bālassa	bālāya	bālassa
Dat.	bālassa, bālāya	bālāya	bālassa, bālāya
Acc.	bālaṃ	bālāṃ	bālaṃ
Ins.	bālena	bālāya	bālena
Abl.	bālā bālaṃ bālaṃ bālaṃ bālaṃ	bālāya	bālā bālaṃ bālaṃ bālaṃ bālaṃ
Loc.	bāle bālaṃ bālaṃ	bālāya bālāyaṃ	bāle bālaṃ bālaṃ
Voc.	bāla bālā	bālā bāle	bāla

*Plural.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	bālā	bālā bālāyo	bālāni bālā
Gen.	bālānaṃ	bālānaṃ	bālānaṃ
Dat.	bālānaṃ	bālānaṃ	bālānaṃ
Acc.	bāle	bālā bālāyo	bālāni bāle
Ins.	bālehi bālebhi	bālāhi bālābhi	bālehi bālebhi
Abl.	bālehi bālebhi	bālāhi bālābhi	bālehi bālebhi
Loc.	bālesu	bālāsu	bālesu
Voc.	bālā	bālā bālāyo	bālāni bālā

## EXERCISE.

*Adjectives declined like deva, kaññā and rūpaṃ.*

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
dūra, far	dūro	dūrā	dūraṃ
taruṇa, young	taruṇo	taruṇā	taruṇaṃ
dīgha, long	dīgho	dīghā	dīghaṃ
rassa, short	rasso	rassā	rassaṃ
gambhīra, deep	gambhīro	gambhīrā	gambhīraṃ
pharusa, harsh	pharuso	pharusā	pharusaṃ
sukkha, dry	sukkho	sukkā	sukkhāṃ
āmaka, raw	āmako	āmakā	āmakaṃ
pāpa, evil	pāpo	pāpā	pāpaṃ
khema, calm	khemo	khemā	khemaṃ

201. We give here only a few examples of Feminine Adjectives formed by means of *ī* from stems in *α*.

pāpa, evil	pāpo	pāpī
taruṇa, young	taruṇo	taruṇī
dīpana, illuminating	dīpano	dīpanī

*Remarks.* As above said, these adjectives are declined like *nadī* and therefore present no difficulty.

202. **Adjective in *i* (short).**

203. Adjectives ending in *i* are declined like *kapi*, in the Masculine, and like *vari*, in the Neuter. The Feminine formed by means of *ni* is declined like *nadī*.

204. DECLENSION OF **BHŪRI** (STEM) ABUNDANT.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	bhūri	bhūrini	bhūri
Gen.	bhūrissa bhūrino	bhūriniyā	bhūrissa bhūrino
Dat.	bhūrissa bhūrino	bhūriniyā	bhūrissa bhūrino
Acc.	bhūrim	bhūriniṃ	bhūrim
Ins.	bhūrīnā	bhūriniyā	bhūrīnā
Abl.	bhūrīnā bhūrismā bhūrimhā	bhūriniyā	bhūrīnā bhūrismā bhūrimhā
Loc.	bhūrismiṃ bhūrimhi	bhūriniyā bhūriniyam	bhūrismiṃ bhūrimhi
Voc.	bhūri	bhūrini	bhūri

*Plural.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	bhūrī bhūrayo	bhūrinī bhūriniyo	bhūrīni bhūrī
Gen.	bhūrīnaṃ	bhūrīnīnaṃ	bhūrīnaṃ
Dat.	bhūrīnaṃ	bhūrīnīnaṃ	bhūrīnaṃ
Acc.	bhūrī bhūrayo	bhūrinī bhūriniyo	bhūrīni bhūrī
Ins.	bhūrīhi bhūrībhi	bhūrīnīhi bhūrīnībhi	bhūrīhi bhūrībhi
Abl.	bhūrīhi *bhūrībhi	bhūrīnīhi bhūrīnībhi	bhūrīhi bhūrībhi
Loc.	bhūrīsu	bhūrīnīsu	bhūrīsu
Voc.	bhūrī bhūrayo	bhūrinī bhūriniyo	bhūrīni bhūrī

205. **Adjectives in ī (long).**

206. A numerous class of masculine adjectives are derived from nouns by means of suffix ī [an adjectival suffix not to be confounded with the feminine suffix ī (181, 2; 185).]

## EXAMPLES.

*Substantives.*

pāpa, sin  
dhamma, religion  
māna, pride  
soka, sorrow  
roga, sickness  
makkha, hypocrisy

*Adjectives.*

pāpī, sinful  
dhammī, religious, pious  
mānī, proud  
sokī, sorrowful  
rogī, sick  
makkhī, hypocritical

207. The masculine is declined like daṇḍī.

208. The feminine is formed by adding *nī*, before which final *ī* is shortened; it is declined like *nadī*.

209. In the neuter final *ī* is shortened to *i* and is declined like *vāri*.

# 210. DECLENSION OF **ESI**, WISHING.

## Singular.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	esī	esinī	esi
Gen.	esissa esino	esiniyā	esissa esino
Dat.	esissa esino	esiniyā	esissa esino
Acc.	esim	esinim	esim
Ins.	esinā	esiniyā	esinā
Abl.	esinā esismā esimhā	esiniyā	esinā esismā esimhā
Loc.	esismim esimhi	esiniyā esiniyam	esismim esimhi
Voc.	esī	esinī	esi

## Plural.

Nom.	esī esino	esinī esiniyo	esīni esī
Gen.	esīnam	esinīnam	esīnam
Dat.	esīnam	esinīnam	esīnam
Acc.	esī	esinī esiniyo	esīni esī
Ins.	esīhi esībhi	esinīhi esinībhi	esīhi esībhi
Abl.	esīhi esibhi	esinīhi esinībhi	esīhi esibhi
Loc.	esīsu	esinīsu	esīsu
Voc.	esī	esinī	esī

*Decline like esā.*

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
ekākī, solitary	ekākinī	ekāki
cārī, roaming	cārinī	cāri
ekakkhī, one-eyed	ekakkhinī	ekakkhi
maccharī, niggardly	maccharinī	macchari
sūrī, wise	sūrinī	sūri
jayī, victorious	jayinī	jayi

211. **Adjectives in u (short.)**

212. These are declined in the masculine like *bhikkhu*, in the feminine like *nadī*, and in the neuter like *cakkhu*.

213. The feminine base is formed by the addition of *nī*.

214. **DECLENSION OF GARU (FEM.)—HEAVY.**

*Singular.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	garu	garunī	garu
Gen.	garussa garuno	garuniyā	garussa garuno
Dat.	garussa garuno	garuniyā	garussa garuno
Acc.	garum	garunim	garum
Ins.	garunā	garuniyā	garunā
Abl.	garunā garusmā garumhā	garuniyā	garunā garusmā garumhā
Loc.	garusmim garumhi	garuniyā garuniyam	garusmim garumhi
Voc.	garu	garunī	garu



*Plural.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	garū garavo	garunī garuniyo	garūni garū
Gen.	garūnaṃ	garunīnaṃ	garūnaṃ
Dat.	garūnaṃ	garunīnaṃ	garūnaṃ
Acc.	garū garavo	garunī garuniyo	garūni garū
Ins.	garūhi garūbhi	garunīhi garunibhi	garūhi garūbhi
Abl.	garūhi garūbhi	garunīhi garunibhi	garūhi garūbhi
Loc.	garūsu	garunīsu	garūsu
Voc.	garū garavo	garunī garuniyo	garūni garū

*Decline like garu*

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
bahu, many	bahunī	bahu
sādu, agreeable	sādunī	sādu
sādhū, good	sādhunī	sādhū
dattu, stupid	dattunī	dattu

215. **Adjectives in ū (long.)**

216. Adjectives in *ū* form their feminine by means of *nī*, *ū* being shortened before it.

217. They are declined, in the masculine, like *sayambhū* in the feminine like *nadī*, and in the neuter like *cakkhu*.

218.

DECLENSION OF **VIÑÑŪ**, WISE.*Singular.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	viññū	viññunī	viññu
Gen.	viññussa viññuno	viññuniyā	viññussa viññuno
Dat.	viññussa viññuno	viññuniyā	viññussa viññuno
Acc.	viññum	viññunim	viññum
Ins.	viññunā	viññuniyā	viññunā
Abl.	viññunā viññusmā viññumhā	viññuniyā	viññunā viññusmā viññumhā
Loc.	viññusmim viññumhi	viññuniyā viññuniyam	viññusmim viññumhi
Voc.	viññū	viññunī	viññu

*Plural.*

Nom.	viññū viññuvo	viññunī viññuniyo	viññūni viññū
Gen.	viññūnam	viññūnīnam	viññūnam
Dat.	viññūnam	viññūnīnam	viññūnam
Acc.	viññū viññuvo	viññunī viññuniyo	viññūni viññū
Ins.	viññūhi viññūbhi	viññunīhi viññunībhi	viññūhi viññūbhi
Abl.	viññūhi viññūbhi	viññunīhi viññunībhi	viññūhi viññūbhi
Loc.	viññūsu	viññunīsu	viññūsu
Voc.	viññū viññuvo	viññunī viññuniyo	viññūni viññū

*Decline like viññū*

in the Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

niddālū, sleepy

pabhū, powerful

mattaññū, temperate

kataññū, grateful

### 219. ADJECTIVES WITH CONSONANTAL BASES.

220. Adjectives with consonantal bases are of three kinds :

- |     |                                 |                            |
|-----|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| (1) | those the stem of which ends in | <b>at</b> or <b>ant.</b>   |
| (2) | "      "      "                 | <b>mat</b> or <b>mant.</b> |
| (3) | "      "      "                 | <b>vat</b> or <b>vant.</b> |

221. All the adjectives in **mat**, **mant**, and **vat**, **vant**, are formed from nouns by means of suffixes **mā** and **vā** (*whose original base is mat and vat*), which express *possession* of the quality or state indicated by the noun to which they are affixed.

222. It must, however, be remarked that **vā** and **mā** are not affixed indiscriminately. The following rule is invariable :

- (a) Suffix **vā** is added only to nouns ending in **a**.  
 (b) Suffix **mā** is always added to nouns ending in **i** and **u**.

#### a.—EXAMPLES.

<i>Noun.</i>	<i>Adjective.</i>
māna, pride	mānavā, having pride, viz., proud
guṇa, virtue	guṇavā, having virtue, viz., virtuous
bhoga, wealth	bhogavā, possessing wealth, viz., wealthy
bala, strength	balavā, possessing strength, viz., strong

## b.—EXAMPLES.

<i>Noun.</i>	<i>Adjectives.</i>
suci, purity.	sucimā, endowed with purity, <i>vis.</i> , pure
sati, thought.	satimā, possessed of thought, <i>vis.</i> , thoughtful
khanti, patience.	khantimā, endowed with patience, <i>vis.</i> , patient
hetu, cause	* hetumā, having a cause, causal
bandhu, relative	bandhumā having a relative

223. The Feminine is formed by adding *i* to either of the bases *vis.*, *mat*, *mant* or *vat*, *vānt*; for instance:—

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
guṇavat	guṇavā	guṇavatī
guṇavant		guṇavantī
jutimat	jutimā	jutimatī
jutimant		jutimantī

224. In the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. sing.*, the Neuter is formed by adding *m* after *vā* and *mā*, the long *a* being shortened (4, 34): and *ni* to the stem in *vant* and *mant*, for the *Nom.*, *Acc.* and *Voc. plural*.

<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
jutimant	jutimā	jutimam	jutimantāni
guṇavant	guṇavā	guṇavam	guṇavantāni

225. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN **AT** OR **ANT**.226. DECLENSION OF **MAHĀ** (STEM MAHAT, MAHANT)  
GREAT, LARGE.*Singular.**Masculine.**Feminine.**Neuter.*

Nom. maharṁ  
mahanto

mahatī  
mahantī

maharṁ  
mahantarṁ

Gen. mahato  
mahantassa

mahatiyā  
mahantiyā

mahato  
mahantassa

Dat. mahato  
mahantassa

mahatiyā  
mahantiyā

mahato  
mahantassa

'Acc. mahantarṁ

mahatiṁ  
mahantiṁ

mahantarṁ

Ins. mahatā  
mahantena

mahatiyā  
mahantiyā

mahatā  
mahantena

'Abl. mahatā  
mahantasmā  
mahantambhā

mahatiyā  
mahantiyā

mahatā  
mahantasmā  
mahantamhī

Loc. mahati  
mahante  
mahantasmim  
mahantamhi

mahatiyā  
mahantiyā  
mahatiyam  
mahantiyam

mahati  
mahante  
mahantasmim  
mahantamhi

Voc. maharṁ  
mahā  
maha

mahatī  
mahantī

maharṁ  
mahā  
maha

*Plural.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Femine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	mahanto mahantā	mahatī mahatiyo mahantī mahantiyo	mahantāni mahantā
Gen.	mahataṃ mahantānaṃ	mahatīnaṃ mahantīnaṃ	mahataṃ mahantānaṃ
Dat.	mahataṃ mahantānaṃ	mahatīnaṃ mahantīnaṃ	mahataṃ mahantānaṃ
Acc.	mahante mahantā mahanto	mahatī mahatiyo mahantī mahantiyo	mahantāni mahantā
Ins.	mahantehi mahantebhi	mahatīhi mahatībhi mahantīhi mahantībhi	mahantehi mahantebhi
Abl.	mahantehi mahantebhi	mahatīhi mahatībhi mahantīhi mahantībhi	mahantehi mahantebhi
Loc.	mahantesu	mahatīsu mahantīsu	mahantesu
Voc.	mahantā mahanto	mahatī mahatiyo mahantī mahantiyo	mahantāni mahantā

• *Remarks.* (a) The declension of *Mahā* should be carefully studied, as all the *Present Participles*, in *at* and *ant*, as for instance *gacchaṃ* or *gacchanto*, *karaṃ* or *karanto*, *paçaṃ* or *paçanto*, are declined like it.

(b) We have already given (167) the declension of *arahaṃ* which, in the *Nom. sing.*, has also the form *arahā*.

(c) The word *santo* (167) meaning *a good man*, is similarly declined; the form *sabbhi*, however, is also found in the *Ins.* and *Abl. plural*.

### EXERCISE.

*Decline like maham (stem: mahat, mahant)*

in the Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

*caram*, *caranto* (stem: *carat*, *carant*) walking, roaming.

*bhuñjaṃ*, *bhuñjanto* (stem: *bhuñjat*, *bhuñjant*) eating.

*karaṃ*, *karanto* (stem: *karat*, *karant*) doing.

*saraṃ*, *saranto* (stem: *sarat*, *sarant*) remembering

*vasaṃ*, *vasanto* (stem: *vasat*, *vasant*) living.

*pucchaṃ*, *pucchanto* (stem: *pucchat*, *pucchant*) asking.

### 227. Declension of Adjectives in *Mat* or *Mant*

#### 228. DECLENSION OF *DHĪMĀ*, WISE.

(STEM: *DHĪMAT*, *DHĪMANT*).

*Singular.*

*Masculine.*

*Feminine.*

*Neuter.*

*Nom.*

*dhīmā*

*dhīmatī*

*dhīmaṃ*

*dhīmanto*

*dhīmantī*

*dhīmantaṃ*

*Singular.**Masculine.**Feminine.**Neuter.*

Gen.	dhīmato dhīmantassa	dhīmatiyā dhīmantiyā	dhīmato dhīmantassa
Dat.	dhīmato dhīmantassa	dhīmatiyā dhīmantiyā	dhīmato dhīmantassa
Acc.	dhīmaṃ dhīmantam	dhīmatim dhīmantiṃ	dhīmaṃ dhīmantam
Ins.	dhīmatā dhīmantena	dhīmatiyā dhīmantiyā	dhīmatā dhīmantena
Abl.	dhīmatā dhīmantā dhīmantasmā dhīmantamhā	dhīmatiyā dhīmantiyā	dhīmatā dhīmantā dhīmantasmā dhīmantamhā
Loc.	dhīmati dhīmante dhīmantasmiṃ dhīmantamhi	dhīmatiyā dhīmantiyā dhīmatiyam dhīmantiyam	dhīmati dhīmante dhīmantasmiṃ dhīmantamhi
Voc.	dhīmaṃ dhīmā dhīma dhīmantā dhīmanta	dhīmatī dhīmanti	dhīmaṃ dhīmā dhīma dhīmanta dhīmantā

*Plural.*

Nom.	dhīmantā dhīmanto dhīmā	dhīmatī dhīmatiyo dhīmanti dhīmantiyo	dhīmantāni dhīmantā
------	-------------------------------	------------------------------------------------	------------------------



*Plural.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Gen.	dhīmataṃ dhīmantānaṃ	dhīmatīnaṃ dhīmantīnaṃ	dhīmataṃ dhīmantānaṃ
Dat.	dhīmataṃ dhīmantānaṃ	dhīmatīnaṃ dhīmantīnaṃ	dhīmataṃ dhīmantānaṃ
Acc.	dhīmante	dhīmatī dhīmatiyo dhīmanti dhīmantiyo	dhīmantāni dhīmantā
Ins.	dhīmantehi dhīmantebhi	dhīmatīhi dhīmatībhi dhīmantihi dhīmantībhi	dhīmantehi dhīmantebhi
Abl.	dhīmantehi dhīmentebhi	dhīmatīhi dhīmatībhi dhīmantihi dhīmantībhi	dhīmantehi dhīmantebhi
Loc.	dhīmantesu	dhīmatīsu dhīmantisu	dhīmantesu
Voc.	dhīmantā dhīmanto dhīmā	dhīmatī dhīmatiyo dhīmanti dhīmantiyo	dhīmantāni dhīmantā

## EXERCISE.

*Decline like dhīmā.*

(stem : dhīmat, dhīmant)

in the Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

gomā (stem : gomat, gomant), a cattle owner.

puttimā (stem : puttimat, puttimant), having sons.

khānumā (stem : khānumat, khānumant), having stumps.

ketumā (stem : ketumat, ketumant), glorious, victorious, *lit.*, having banners.

hetumā (stem : hetumat, hetumant), having a cause.

cakkhumā (stem : cakkhumat, cakkhumant), enlightened.

229. Declension of Adjectives in *Vat* or *Vant*.

*Remarks.* The declension of adjectives in *vat*, *vant* is the same as that of those in *mat*, *mant*; the only difference being that, of course, *v* replaces *m* throughout.

## 230. DECLENSION OF GUNAVĀ, VIRTUOUS.

(stem : guṇavat, guṇavant.)

*Singular.*

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Nom.	guṇavā guṇavanto	guṇavatī guṇavantī	guṇavaṇi guṇavantani
Gen.	guṇavato guṇavantassa	guṇavatiyā guṇavantiyā	guṇavato guṇavantassa
Dat.	guṇavato guṇavantassa	guṇavatiyā guṇavantiyā	guṇavato guṇavantassa
Acc.	guṇavaṇi guṇavantam	guṇavatīm guṇavantīm	guṇavaṇi guṇavantam

*Singular.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Ins.	guṇavatā guṇavantena	guṇavatiyā guṇavantiyā	guṇavatā <sup>*</sup> guṇavantena
'Abl.	guṇavatā guṇavantā guṇavantasmā guṇavantamhā	guṇavatiyā guṇavantiyā	guṇavatā guṇavantā guṇavantasmā guṇavantamhā
Loc.	guṇavati guṇavante guṇavantasmim	guṇavatiyā guṇavatiyaṁ guṇavantiyā	guṇavati guṇavante guṇavantas- mim
Voc.	guṇavantamhi guṇavaṁ guṇavā guṇava guṇavanta guṇavantā	guṇavantiyaṁ guṇavati guṇavantī	guṇavantamhi guṇavaṁ guṇavā guṇava guṇavanta guṇavantā

*Plural.*

Nom.	guṇavantā guṇavanto guṇavā	guṇavati guṇavatiyo guṇavanti guṇavantiyo	guṇavantāni guṇavantā
Gen.	guṇavataṁ guṇavantānaṁ	guṇavatīnaṁ guṇavantiṇaṁ	guṇavataṁ guṇavantānaṁ
Dat.	guṇavataṁ guṇavantānaṁ	guṇavatīnaṁ guṇavantiṇaṁ	guṇavataṁ guṇavantānaṁ
Acc.	guṇavante	guṇavati guṇavatiyo guṇavanti guṇavantiyo	guṇavantāni guṇavantā

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Plural.</i> <i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Ins.	guṇavantehi guṇavantebhi	guṇavatihi guṇavatibhi guṇavantihi guṇavantibhi	guṇavantehi guṇavantebhi
Abl.	guṇavantehi guṇavantebhi	guṇavatihi guṇavatibhi guṇavantihi guṇavantibhi	guṇavantehi guṇavantebhi
Loc.	guṇavantesu	guṇavatisu guṇavantisu	guṇavantesu
Voc.	guṇavantā guṇavanto guṇavā	guṇavati guṇavatiyo guṇavanti guṇavantiyo	guṇavantāni guṇavantā

231. There is another not very numerous class of Adjectives formed from *nouns* and *Roots* by means of suffixes **āvī** and **vī**.

232. The original stem of **āvī** and **vī** is **āvin** and **vin** and they therefore belong to the Consonantal declension. **Vī** is used after nouns, and **āvī** after roots.

233. The Feminine is formed by adding the feminine suffix **nī**, before which final long **ī** is shortened.

234. In the Neuter, final **i** is shortened in the *Nom.* and *Voc.* singular; in the plural, before neuter suffix **ni**, final **ī** remains unchanged.

235. **Vī**, like **mā** and **vā**, expresses *possession*.

#### EXAMPLES.

				<i>Neuter</i>
<i>Noun.</i>	<i>Adj. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
medhā, wisdom	medhāvī	medhāvinī	medhāvi, medhāvinī	
√pass, to see,	passāvī	passāvinī	passāvi, passāvinī	

The declension of these Adjectives presents no difficulty. They are declined in the Masculine like *daṇḍi* in the Feminine like *naḍi* and in the Neuter like *vāri*.

### 236. NEGATIVE ADJECTIVES.

237. Negative Adjectives are obtained by prefixing to affirmative Adjectives the prefix *a* and *an*.

*Remarks.* *a* is used before a consonant, and *an* before a vowel.

### EXAMPLES.

dīgha, long	adīgha, not long
ākula, turbid	anākula, not turbid, clear

### COMPARISON.

238. The Comparison of Adjectives is formed in two ways:

(1) by adding *tara* for the Comparative and *tama* for the Superlative, to the Masculine bases of the Positive.

(2) by adding *iya* or *iyya* for the Comparative, and *ittha*, *issika* for the Superlative, to the Masculine bases of the Positive.

239. The Comparative and Superlative are declined in the Masculine like *deva*, in the Feminine like *kaññā* and in the Neuter like *rūpaṃ*.

### EXAMPLES.

(1) *tara*, *tama*.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
suci, pure	sucitara, purer	sucitama, purest
pāpa, evil	pāpatara, more evil	pāpatama, most evil
omaka, vile	omakatara, viler	omakatama, vilest
hari, green	haritara, greener	haritama, greenest

*Remarks.* Of the above Comparative and Superlative bases, the masculine is, *sucitaro, sucitamo*; the feminine, *sucitarā, sucitamā*, and the Neuter, *sucitaraṃ*, etc., etc.

(2) *iya (iyya), ittha, issika.*

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
pāpa, evil	pāpiya, more evil	pāpiṭṭha, most evil
	pāpiyya, more evil	pāpissika, most evil
khippa, quick	khippiya, quicker	khippitṭha, quick- est
	khippiyya, quicker	khippissika, quick- est
kaṭṭha, bad	kaṭṭhiya, worse	kaṭṭhiṭṭha, worst
	kaṭṭhiyya, worse	kaṭṭhissika, worst

240. With many, we should say most, adjectives, suffixes of (238-1) *tara, tama*, or of (2) *iya, iyya, ittha, issika*, may be used interchangeably.

#### EXAMPLES.

pāpatara or pāpiya.

khippatara or khippiya.

pāpatama or pāpiṭṭha or pāpissika, etc.

241. The comparatives in *iya, iyya*, are declined like *mano* (159).

242. It will be remarked that, before *iya, iyya, ittha* and *issika*, the *final vowel* of the Positive Adjective is dropped.

243. Adjectives formed by means of the possessive suffixes, *ma (mat), vā (vat)* (221), and *vī, vin* (231), drop these suffixes and the vowel which precedes them, before *iya, iyya, ittha* and *issika*.

#### EXAMPLES.

(a) *guṇavā + iyo = guṇa + iyo = guṇ + iyo = guṇiyo*. Similarly: *guṇiyyo, guṇiyyo: guṇ-ittha*, etc.

(b) medhāvī + iyo = medhā + iyo = medh + iyo = medhiyo.

Similarly: medh-iyyo, medhiyyo; medh-itṭha, medhitṭha, etc.

(c) satimā + iyo = sati + iyo = sat + iyo = satiyo.

Similarly: sat-iyyo = satiyyo; sat-itṭha, = satiṭṭha, etc.

244. *Tara* may be superadded to the Superlative itṭha, as: pāpitṭhataṛa.

245. The *Acc. sing.* of most Adjectives is used *adverbially*.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Adjective.</i>	<i>Adverb.</i>
kippha, quick	kippham, quickly
sukha, happy	sukham, happily
sigha, swift	sigham, swiftly
manda, stupid	mandam, stupidly

246. The Absolute Superlative is formed by prefixing *ati* to the Positive adjective:

atikippha, very quick, extremely quick, too quick.

atippasattha, very excellent.

atithoka, very little, too little, excessively little.

247. Some Adjectives form their Comparison irregularly.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
antika, near	nediya, nearer	neditṭha, nearest
bālha, strong	sādhiya, stronger	sādhitṭha, strong-
	sādhiyya, stronger	est
appa, few	kaniya, fewer	kaniṭṭha, fewest

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
yuva, young	kaṇiya, younger	kaṇiṭṭha, youngest
vuddha, old	jeyya, older	jeṭṭha, oldest
passattha, excellent, good	seyya, better	seṭṭha, most excellent, best
garu, heavy	gariya, heavier	gariṭṭha, heaviest

248. Any substantive is used in the sense of an adjective when it is the last member of a Bahubbhīhi compound (*see chapter on Compounds : Bahubbhīhi*) qualifying a noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

249. The noun thus used, whether Feminine or Neuter assumes the form of the Masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Noun.</i>	<i>as Adjective.</i>
(i) dassanaṃ, (neut.) looking	ruddadassano kumbhīlo, a fierce-looking crocodile
(ii) jaṅghā, (fem.) leg	dīghajaṅgho puriso, a long-legged man
(iii) paññā, (fem.) wisdom	mahāpañño, having great wisdom, very wise
(iv) sīlaṃ, (neut.) morality	sampannasīlo, one who is full of morality : moral, virtuous
(v) hattho (masc.) hand	chinnahatthena purisena kato, done by a man whose hands have been cut off.



## CHAPTER VIII.

250

## NUMERALS.

The Numerals are as follows :—

251. *Cardinals.**Ordinals.*

1, eka, one	paṭhama, first
2, dve, two	dutiya, second
3, tayo, three	tatiya, third
4, cattāro	catuttha, turīya
5, pañca	pañcatha, pañcama
6, cha	chaṭṭha, chatthama
7, satta	sattha, sattama
8, aṭṭha	aṭṭhama
9, nava	navama
10, dasa, rasa, lasa lara	dasma
11, ekārasa, ekādasā	ekarasama
12, bārasa, dvārasa	bārasama
13, tedasa, terasa, telasa	tedasama
14, catuddasa, cuddasa, coddasa	catuddasama
15, pañcadasa pañṇarasa pannarasa	pañcadasama
16, soḷasa, sorasa	soḷasama
17, sattadasa sattarasa	sattadasama
18, aṭṭhādasā aṭṭhārāsa	aṭṭhādasama
19, ekūnavīsati ekūnavīsaṃ	ekūnavīsatiṃ

*Cardinals.**Ordinals.*

20, vīsati, vīsaraṃ	vīsatima
21, ekavīsati ekavīsaraṃ	ekavīsatima
22, dvāvīsati	dvāvīsatima
23, tevīsati	tevīsatima
24, catuvīsati	catuvīsatima
25, pañcavīsati	pañcavīsatima
26, chabbīsati	chabbīsatima
27, sattabīsati sattavīsati	sattabīsatima
28, aṭṭhavīsaraṃ	aṭṭhavīsatima
29, ekūnatimīsati ekūnatimsaraṃ	ekūnatimsatima
30, timīsati, timsaraṃ	timsatima
31, ekatimsati	ekatimsatima
32, dvattimsati	dvattimsatima
40, cattālīsaraṃ cattārīsaraṃ	cattālīsatima
50, paññāsa paññāsaraṃ	paññāsama
60, saṭṭhi	saṭṭhima
70, sattati	sattatima
80, asīti	asītima
90, navuti	navutima
100, sataraṃ	satama
200, bāsaraṃ dvāsaraṃ	bāsatama
1000, sahasaraṃ	sahassama
10000, dasasahasaraṃ	dasasahassama
10 00000, koṭi	koṭima

252.

## (1) CARDINALS

253. *Eka*, one, is in the singular very often used in an indefinite sense, meaning : *a certain*, *a* : as.

eko nāviko, a boatman, a certain boatman.  
ekā kumārikā, a princess, a certain princess.

In the plural, it means : *some*, as,

eke purisā, some men...

ekā mānusinī, some women...

254. The cardinals, *eka*, *taya* and *cattāro* are declined in the *plural* in the three genders : *eka*, alone of course, having *singular* forms.

255

DECLENSION OF **EKA**, ONE.*Singular.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	eko	ekā	ekaṁ
Gen.	ekassa	skissā ekissāya	ekassa
Dat.	ekassa	ekissā eksisāya	ekassa
Acc.	ekaṁ	ekaṁ	ekaṁ
Ins.	ekena	ekāya	ekena
Abl.	ekasmā ekamhā	ekāya	ekasmā ekamhā
Loc.	ekasmim ekamhi	ekāya ekissam	ekasmim ekamhi
Voc.	eka	eke	eka

*Plural.*

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	eke	ekā ekāyo	ekāni
Gen.	ekesaṃ	ekāsaṃ	ekesaṃ
Dat.	ekesaṃ	ekāsaṃ	ekesaṃ
Acc.	eke	ekā ekāyo	ekāni
Ins.	ekehi ekebhi	ekāhi ekābhi	ekehi ekebhi
Abl.	ekehi ekebhi	ekāhi ekābhi	ekehi ekebhi
Loc.	ekesu	ekāsu	ekesu
Voc.	eke	ekā ekāyo	ekāni

*Remark.* The above declension is chiefly *pronominal*. (See *Pronouns*, Chapter IX).

256. **DECLENSION OF TAYO, THREE.**

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	tayo	tisso	tīṇi
Gen.	tiṇṇaṃ tiṇṇannaṃ	tissaṃ tissannaṃ	tiṇṇaṃ tiṇṇannaṃ
Dat.	tiṇṇaṃ tiṇṇannaṃ	tissaṃ tissannaṃ	tiṇṇaṃ tiṇṇannaṃ
Acc.	tayo	tisso	tīṇi
Ins.	tīhi tībhi	tīhi tībhi	tīhi tībhi
Abl.	tīhi tībhi	tīhi tībhi	tīhi tībhi
Loc	tīsu	tīsu	tīsu

257. DECLENSION OF **CATTĀRO**, **CATURO**, FOUR

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	cattāro caturo	catasso	cattāri
Gen.	catunnaṃ	catassannaṃ cattassaṃ	catunnaṃ
Dat.	catunnaṃ	catassaṃ catassannaṃ	catunnaṃ
Acc.	cattāro caturo	catasso	cattāri
Ins.	catubbhi catūhi catūbhi	catubbhi catūhi catūbhi	catubbhi catūhi catūbhi
Abi.	catubbhi catūhi catūbhi	catubbhi catūhi catūbhi	catubbhi catūhi catūbhi
Loc.	catūsu	catūsu	catūsu

258. (a) In composition, the base of *tayo*, is *tī*, as, *tilokahitada*, bestowing benefits on the three worlds.

(b) Not seldom, *tri* also is met with : *trikumbhanagaraṃ*, the "Three-Hillock-City" (Rangoon).

(c) The base of *cattāro* in composition is *catu* before a consonant, the consonant being often reduplicated; and *catur* before a vowel :

*catumukho*, having four faces

*catuppado*, a quadruped

*catupariṣaṃ*, the four assemblies

*caturāṅgī* (*catu. r. āṅgī*), having four divisions.

*caturasso* (*catu. r. asso*), having four corners, quadrangular.

259. The Dual has completely disappeared in Pāli: the only two vestiges that have come down to us being *dve* or *duve*, two, and *ubho*, both. But even in these two words, the student will remark that the inflection of the plural has almost entirely superseded that of the dual.

260. *Dve* or *duve* and *ubho* are of the three genders, and used in the plural only.

	<i>dve</i> , two	<i>ubho</i> , both
Nom.	<i>dve</i> <i>duve</i>	<i>ubho</i> <i>ubhe</i>
Gen.	<i>dvinnam</i> <i>duvinnam</i>	<i>ubhinnam</i>
Dat.	<i>dvinnam</i> <i>duvinnam</i>	<i>ubhinnam</i>
Acc.	<i>dve</i> <i>duve</i>	<i>ubho</i> <i>ubhe</i>
Ins.	<i>dvīhi</i> <i>dvibhi</i>	<i>ubhoḥi</i> , <i>ubhobhi</i> <i>ubhehi</i> , <i>ubhebbhi</i>
Abl.	<i>dvīhi</i> <i>dvibhi</i>	<i>ubhoḥi</i> , <i>ubhobhi</i> <i>ubhehi</i> , <i>ubhebbhi</i>
Loc.	<i>dvīsu</i>	<i>ubhosu</i> , <i>ubhesu</i>

261. (a) The base of *dve*, *duve* in composition is *dvi* and also *di*, *du* and *dve*.

*dvijo*, twice-born, a brahmin

*dvijivho*, double-tongued, a snake

*dvipo*, drinking twice, an elephant

*dipako*, two-legged, a hiped

*diguṇo*, two-fold

*duvidho*, of two kinds

*dvebhūmako*, having two stories

*dvepakkho*, two factions or parties

(b) *dva*, *dvā* are also used as the bases of *dve*, but chiefly in composition with other numbers.

*dvattikkhattum* (*dva-ti-khattum*), two or three times

*dvatimsati*, thirty-two

*dvāsatthi*, sixty-two

*dvāvīsati*, twenty-two

(c) *bā* is similarly used as a base.

*bārasa*, *bādasa*, twelve

*bāvīsati*, twenty-two

262. *Pañca* five, is, like *dve*, of the three genders. It is declined as follows :

Nom.	<i>pañca</i>
Gen.	<i>pañcannam</i>
Dat.	<i>pañcannam</i>
Acc.	<i>pañca</i>
Ins.	<i>pañcahi</i>
Abl.	<i>pañcahi</i>
Loc.	<i>pañcasu</i>

263. The other numbers, up to 18 included, are also of the three genders, and are declined as follows :

<i>Nom. Acc. and Voc.</i>	<i>Gen. and Dat.</i>	<i>Ins. and Abl.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
six, <i>cha</i>	<i>channam</i>	<i>chahi</i>	<i>chasu</i>
seven, <i>satta</i>	<i>sattannam</i>	<i>sattahi</i>	<i>sattasu</i>
eight, <i>aṭṭha</i>	<i>aṭṭhannam</i>	<i>aṭṭhahi</i>	<i>aṭṭhasu</i>
nine, <i>nava</i>	<i>navannam</i>	<i>navahi</i>	<i>navasu</i>
ten, <i>dasa</i>	<i>dasannam</i>	<i>dasahi</i>	<i>dasasu</i>

264. The numerals from 11 to 18 are declined in exactly the same way.

265. Here it must be observed that 10 has three forms: *dasā, rasā, laṣā*, the last two being used only in composition with other numerals: *laṣā* is also found.

266. The numerals from 19 to 99 are *feminine*; as they are formed by prefixing the numerals from 1 to 9 to the *decades*, the decades are here given separately.

20, <i>vīsati, viṣa.</i>	50, <i>paññāsa, paṇṇāsa</i>
30, <i>tiṃsati, tiṃsa</i>	60, <i>saṭṭhi</i>
40, <i>cattālīsa, cattālisa</i>	70, <i>sattati</i>
<i>cattārisa, tālīsa, tālisa</i>	80, <i>asiti</i>
	90, <i>navuti</i>

267. The numerals ending in *i* are declined like the *feminines* in *i* (*jāti, ratti*).

268. Those in *a* take in the *Nom.* sometimes the form in *ā*, like *kaññā*, but usually they assume in the *Nom.* the neuter form in *aṃ*.

269. The following will serve as a model for the declension of numerals from 1 to 19:—

#### DECLENSION OF *VIŚATI*, 20.

<i>Nom. and Voc.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Gen. and Dat.</i>	<i>Ins. and Abl.</i>	<i>Loc.</i>
<i>1st form</i>				
<i>visam, viṣa</i>	<i>vīsaṃ</i>	<i>visāya</i>	<i>visāya</i>	<i>vīsāya vīsāyaṃ</i>
<i>2nd form</i>				
<i>vīsati</i>	<i>vīsatiṃ</i>	<i>vīsatiyā</i>	<i>vīsatiyā</i>	<i>vīsatiyā vīsatiyaṃ</i>



*Remark.* Numerals in *i* follow the 2nd form, and those in *a* the 1st form.

270. To express full decades but one, as 19, 29, 39, etc., *ekūna* (*eka*, one + *ūna*, deficient by) is prefixed to the decades, as :

*ekūnavīsati*, 19, *vis.*, 20 deficient by one

*ekūnatīṃsa*, 29, *vis.*, 30 deficient by one etc.

271. The very high numerals as, *koṭi* *ten millions*; *pakoṭi*, *one hundred billions*, etc., are declined like *vīsati*.

272. *Saṭaṃ* 100, *sahasraṃ* 1000, *lakṣaṃ* 100,000, are neuter substantives, and therefore declined as such on the model of *rūpaṃ* (124).

273.

## (II) ORDINALS.

274. The Ordinals are formed from the Cardinals, from 5 upwards by means of the suffix *mā* :

*Cardinal.**Ordinal.*5, *pañca**pañcama*, 5th6, *cha**chama*, 6th7, *satta**sattama*, 7th8, *aṭṭha**aṭṭhama*, 8th

etc.

275. Ordinals 5th, 6th and 7th, have two forms :

5th, *pañcatha*, *pañcama*6th, *chaṭṭha*, *chaṭṭhama*7th, *satta*, *sattama*

276. From 5 upwards, the Ordinals form their feminine by means of suffix *ī* (181, 2) and their neuter is formed in *aṃ*. They are therefore declined like *deva*, *nādī* and *rūpaṃ*.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Masc. Nom.</i>	<i>Fem. Nom.</i>	<i>Neut. Nom.</i>
pañcamo	pañcamī	pañcamam
chaṭṭhamo	chaṭṭhamī	chaṭṭhamam
sattamo	sattamī	sattamam
aṭṭhamo	aṭṭhamī	aṭṭhamam
	etc.	

277. From 11 upwards, however, the Cardinals themselves are not seldom used as Ordinals; so that we have the choice of two forms, and can say, either,

ekārasa,	11th, <i>or</i> ekārasama, 11th
pañcadasa,	15th, <i>or</i> pañcadasama, 15th
catuvīsati	24th, <i>or</i> catuvīsatima, 24th
	etc.

278. The first four Ordinals are as follows :

<i>Masc. Nom.</i>	<i>Fem. Nom.</i>	<i>Neut. Nom.</i>
paṭhamo	paṭhamā	paṭhamam
dutiyo	dutiya	dutiyam
tatiyo	tatiyā	tatiyam
catuttho	catutthā	catuttham

*Remark.* They are consequently declined like *deva*, *kaññā* and *rūpaṃ*.

279. (III) ADVERBIAL DERIVATIVES FROM  
NUMERALS.

280. Many important adverbs are derived from numerals by means of some suffixes.

281. By means of suffix *dhā* are formed adverbs signifying : *ways, times, fold, and sometimes kinds.*

EXAMPLES.

*ekadhā*, once

*dvidhā*, in two ways; in two; of two kinds

*tidhā*, in three ways; three-fold, in three parts

282. The word *guṇa*, though not a suffix, is often employed like *dhā* with the meanings of *times, fold.* In the sense of *times*, it generally takes the neuter form in *aṁ*.

EXAMPLES.

*dasaguṇaṁ*, ten times; or ten-fold

*tiguṇaṁ*, three times; or three-fold

*catuguṇaṁ*, four times; or four-fold

*Remark.* In the sense of *fold*, the compound being an *Adjective*, is treated as such and is declined like *deva, kaññā and rūpaṁ.*

283. *dhā* is also used in the same way after a few adjectives :

*bahudhā*, in many ways

*anekadhā*, in more than one way

284. Distributive adverbs are formed from numerals by means of suffix *so* (Sansk. *cas*).

EXAMPLES. <sup>9</sup>

ekaso, one by one  
pañcaso, five by five

285. From *khattum*, multiplicative adverbs are formed.

## EXAMPLES.

dvikkhattum, twice  
sattakkhattum, seven times  
satasahassakkhattum, one hundred thousand times.

286. The two following suffixes, from substantives and adjectives, *ka* and *ya*, form collective nouns and adjectives.

## EXAMPLES.

catukka, four-fold, consisting of four, a collection of four things; a place where four roads meet.

dvaya, of two sorts, consisting of two, a pair.

dvika, duka, consisting of two, a pair.

tika, taya, tayī, consisting of three, a triad, etc.

287. There is an adverb, meaning *once*, *at once*, never used in composition with numerals, it is *sakim*, (Sansk. *sakṛt*). When used before words beginning with a vowel it sometimes takes the forms *sakid* or *sakad*.

## EXAMPLES.

sakim passanto, seeing (him) once

sakim yeva, at once, simultaneously

sakid eva, at once, simultaneously

sakadāgamī (āgamī), returning once only

## CHAPTER IX.

PRONOUNS, PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES,  
AND

## PRONOMINAL DERIVATIVES.

288. (I) PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

289. DECLENSION OF **AHAM**, I.

OF ALL GENDERS.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. aham, I

mayam, we  
amhe, we  
vayam, weGen. mama, my, mine  
mayam, my, mine  
mamam, my, mine  
amham, my, mineamhākam, our, ours  
amham, our, ours  
asmākam, our, ours  
no, our, oursDat. mama, to me, for me  
mayam, to me, for me  
mamam, to me, for me  
amham, to me, for me  
me, to me, for meamhākam to us, for us  
amham, to us, for us  
asmākam, to us, for us  
no, to us, for usAcc. mam, me  
mamam, meamhe, us  
amhākam, us  
asme, us  
amhe, us  
no, us

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Ins.	mayā, me, by me	amhehi, by us amhebbhi, by us no, by us
Abl.	mayā, me, from me	amhehi, from us amhebbhi, from us no, from us
Loc.	mayi, in, on, upon me	amhesu, in, on, upon us  asmāsu, in, on, upon us asmesu, in, on, upon us

*Remarks.* (a) The *singular* base of *aham* is *mad* according to Sanskrit commentators; it is properly *ma* and *mam*. Pronominal derivatives are, however, formed from the three bases: *mad*, *mam* and *ma*, the latter sometimes with the *a* lengthened: *mā* (See *Pronominal Derivation at the end of the present chapter.*)

(b) The form *me*, of the *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Ins.*, *Abl.* *Sing.*, is enclitic; it is never used at the beginning of a sentence.

(c) The form *no*, of the same cases in the plural is also enclitic, and never used at the beginning of a sentence.

(d) The *plural* base is *amha*, or *amhad*.

## 290. DECLENSION OF TVAM, THOU

OF ALL GENDERS.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	tvam, tyou tuvam, thou tam, thou	tumhe, you

*Singular.**Plural.*

Gen.	tava, thy, thine tavaṁ, thy, thine	tumhākaṁ, your, yours tumhaṁ, your, yours vo, your, yours
	tuyhaṁ, thy, thine tumhaṁ, thy, thine te, thy, thine	
Dat.	tava, to thee, for thee tavaṁ, to thee, for thee tuyhaṁ, to thee for thee tumhaṁ, to, thee, for thee te, to thee, for thee	tumhākaṁ, to you, for you tumhaṁ, to you, for you vo, to you, for you
Acc.	tavaṁ, thee taṁ, thee tuvaṁ, thee tvaṁ, thee tyaṁ, thee	tumhe, you tumhākaṁ, you vo, you
Ins.	tvayā, by thee tayā, by thee te, by thee	tumhehi, by you tumhebhī, by you vo, by you
Abl.	tvayā, from thee tayā, from thee tvamhā, from thee te, from thee	tumhehi, from you tumhebhī, from you vo, from you
Loc.	tvayi, in, on, upon thee tayi, in, on, upon thee	tumhesu, in, on, upon you

*Remarks.* (a) The bases are *tad* and *ta* (sometimes lengthened to *tā*), in the *singular*.

(b) *tumha* (*tumhad*), is the plural base.

(c) *te* like *me* of *aham*, is an enclitic form and never begins a sentence; so is *vo* for the plural.

(d) *vo* is also found in the *Nom.* plural.

(e) It will be remarked Pronouns have no forms for the Vocative case.

## 291. (II) DEMONSTRATIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

DECLENSION OF **SO, SĀ, TAM**; THIS, THAT,  
HE, SHE, IT.

### 292. *Masculine.*

**so**, he; this, that

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	so, sa	te
Gen.	tassa	tesam, tesānam
Dat.	tassa	tesam, tesānam
Acc.	taṃ	te
Ins.	tena	tehi, tebhi
Abl.	tasmā, tamhā	tehi, tebhi
Loc.	tasmiṃ, tamhi	tesu

### 293. *Feminine.*

**sā**, she; this, that.

Nom.	sā	tā, tāyo
Gen.	tassā	tāsam
Gen.	tassāya	tāsānam
and	tissā	Dat. tāsam
Dat.	tissāya	tāsānam
	tāya	



	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Acc.	taṁ	tā, tāyo
Ins.	tāya	tāhi, tābhi
Abl.	tāya	tāhi, tābhi
Loc.	tassaṁ tissaṁ tāyaṁ	tāsu

294.

*Neuter.***taṁ**, it; this, that.

Nom.	taṁ, tad	tāni
Gen.	tassa	tesaṁ, tesānaṁ
Dat	tassa	tesaṁ, tesānaṁ
Acc.	taṁ, tad	tāni
Ins.	teṇa	tehi, tebhi
Abl.	tasmā, tamhā	tehi, tebhi
Loc.	tasmim, tamhi	tesu

*Remarks.* (a) In the *Gen.*, *Dat.*, *Abl.* and *Loc.* singular for the *Masc.* and *Neut.*, a form from pronominal stem : *a*, is also used : *assa*, *asmā*, *asmim*., in the *Feminine* too, for the *Gen.*, *Dat.* and *Loc.* singular : *assā*, *assam* (*Loc.*)

(b) In the *Neuter*, the form *tad* is used mostly in compound words, as : *tad* (= *taṁ*) *karo* = *takkaro*, "doing this," and also before a vowel.

(c) It will have been remarked that the stem : *ta*, 3rd personal pronoun (*so*, *sā*, *taṁ*), is also used as a demonstrative.

(d) *ta* is the base or stem of *so*, *sā*, *taṃ*; as above said (Note b), the form *tad* of the base is also used.

(e) Very often, the above pronoun may be translated as the Definite Pronoun.

(f) It is, too, often used pleonastically with the pronouns *ahaṃ* and *tvaṃ*, as are, in fact, most Demonstrative Pronouns; for instance:

*so* 'haṃ = *this I*, viz., I.

*tassa me* (*Dat.*) = *to this me*, viz., to me.

*sā* 'yaṃ (= *sā ayaṃ*) *taṇhā* = *This longing*.

(g) *Attā*, self; own (154), is, in its oblique cases, very much used in a reflexive sense, instead of the three Personal Pronouns.

295. There is a common substitute of *so*, *sā*, *taṃ*, obtained by replacing *t* wherever it occurs, by *n*, for the three genders. Thus we have:

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>nassa</i> = <i>tassa</i>	<i>nāya</i> = <i>tāya</i>	<i>naṃ</i> = <i>taṃ</i>
<i>nena</i> = <i>tena</i>	<i>nassā</i> = <i>tassā</i>	The rest of the
<i>naṃ</i> = <i>taṃ</i>	<i>nassāya</i> = <i>tassāya</i>	oblique cases
<i>nasmā</i> = <i>tasmā</i>	<i>nassaṃ</i> = <i>tassaṃ</i>	are like the
<i>nasmim</i> = <i>tasmim</i>	<i>nāyaṃ</i> = <i>tāyaṃ</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>
<i>ne</i> = <i>te</i>	<i>nā</i> = <i>tā</i> , <i>tāyo</i>	
<i>nehi</i> = <i>tehi</i>	<i>nāhi</i> = <i>tāhi</i>	
<i>nesaṃ</i> = <i>tesaṃ</i>	<i>nāsaṃ</i> = <i>tāsaṃ</i>	
<i>nesu</i> = <i>tesu</i>	<i>nāsu</i> = <i>tāsu</i>	

296. The forms with *n* as above given are generally used when a noun which has been already mentioned, is referred to; as,

*tañ khādāpessāmi nan 'ti.* I'll make you eat *him* (*viz.*, a monkey previously mentioned).

297. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

298. DECLENSION OF **ESO**, **ESĀ**, **ETAM**, THIS.

299. The student will readily perceive that the above Demonstratives are formed simply by prefixing *e* to *so*, *sā* and *tañ*. They are declined exactly like *so*, *sā*, *tañ*.

300. As in the case of *so*, *sā* and *tañ*, so also with *eso*, *esā* and *etam*, the *t* may be replaced all through by *n*, so that we obtain the forms: *enena*, *enam*, *enāya*, etc., whose declension presents no difficulty whatever. These forms are also used in referring to a noun already mentioned.

301. *Eso*, *esā*, *etam* may be translated by "that" sometimes.

302. The neuter *etad* (= *etam*) is used in composition, or before a vowel.

303. This Pronoun is also used pleonastically with a Personal Pronoun (294, f).

304. *e*, is considered as the base of Pronouns *ena*, *eta*, etc. It is much used in derivation.

DECLENSION OF **AYAM**, THIS; THIS HERE.

305.

*Masculine.*

*Singular.*

*Plural*

Nom. *ayam*

*ime*

Gen. *assa*

*imesānam*, *imesam*

*imassa*

*esānam*, *esam*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	assa imassa	imesānaṃ, imesaṃ esānaṃ, esaṃ
Acc.	imaṃ	ime
Ins.	anena iminā	imehi, imebhi ehi, ebhi
Abl.	asmā, imasmā imamhā	imehi, imebhi ehi, ebhi
Loc.	asmim, imasmim imamhi	imesu, esu

306. *Feminine.*

Nom.	ayaṃ	imā imāyo
Gen.	assāya, assā imissāya, imissā imāya	imāsānaṃ imāsaṃ
Dat.	assāya, assā imissāya, imissā imāya	imāsānaṃ imāsaṃ
Acc.	imaṃ	imā imāyo
Ins.	imāya, assā imissā	imāhi imābhi
Abl.	imāya, assā imissā	imāhi imābhi
Loc.	assaṃ, imissaṃ assā, imissā imāyaṃ, imāya	imāsu

307.

*Neuter.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	idaṁ, imaṁ	imāni
Gen.	imassa, assa	imesaṁ, imesānaṁ esānaṁ, esaṁ
Dat.	imassa, assa	imesaṁ, imesānaṁ esānaṁ, esaṁ
Acc.	idaṁ, imaṁ	imāni
Ins.	iminā, anena	imehi, imebhi ehi, ebhi
Abl.	imasmā, amhā asmā	imehi, imebhi ehi, ebhi
Loc.	imasmīṁ, asmīṁ imamhi	imesu, esu

*Remarks.* (a) The student will remark that the declension of *ayaṁ* is based on two stems: **a** and **i**.

(b) *Ayaṁ* is used substantively as well as pronominally.

DECLENSION OF **ASU**, THAT.

308.

*Masculine.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	asu	amū, amuyo
Gen.	amussa, adussa amuno	amūsaṁ amūsānaṁ

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	amussa, adussa amuno	amūsam amūsānam
Acc.	amum	amū, amuyo
Ins.	amunā	amūhi amūbhi
Abl.	amusmā, amumhā amunā	amūhi amūbhi
Loc.	amusmim amumhi	amūsu

309.

*Feminine.*

Nom.	asu	amū, amuyo
Gen.	amussā amuyā	amūsam amūsānam
Dat.	amussā amuyā	amūsam amūsānam
Acc.	amum	amū, amuyo
Ins.	amuyā	amūhi, amūbhi
Abl.	amuyā	amūhi, amūbhi
Loc.	amussam amuyam	amūsu

310.

*Neuter.*

Nom.	adum, amum	amūni, amū
Gen.	amussa, adussa	amūsam, amūsānam

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	amussa, adussa	amūsam, amūsānam
Acc.	aduṁ, amuṁ	amūni, amū
Ins.	amunā	amūhi amūbhi
Abl.	amusmā, amumhā amunā	amūhi amūbhi
Loc.	amusmiṁ amumhi	amūsu

*Remarks.* (a) Some native grammarians also give *amu* for the *Nom. Sing.* in the Masculine and Feminine.

(b) It will be noticed that the stem is *amu*; in the *Neuter*, there are a few forms on the stem *adu*.

(c) To express: *such, so and so*, *ka* is added to the stem, as, *asuka, amuka*.

(d) The forms *asuka* and *amuka* are often used to express some contempt.

(e) These two forms have in the plural *Masc. and Neut. Acc. asuke, amuke*.

311.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

## DECLENSIONS OF YO, YĀ, YAM.

312. Masculine **yo**, who; he who; whoever; what.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	yō	ye
Gen.	yassa	yesam

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Dat.	yassa	yesaṃ
Acc.	yaṃ	ye
Ins.	yena	yehi yebhi
Abl.	yasmā yamhā	yehi yebhi
Loc.	yasmiṃ yamhi	yesu

313 Feminine, **yā**, she; she who; whoever; what.

Nom.	yā	yā, yāyo
Gen.	yāya, yassā	yāsaṃ
Dat.	yāya, yassā	yāsaṃ
Acc.	yaṃ	yā, yāyo
Ins.	yāya	yāhi, yābhi
Abl.	yāya	yāhi, yābhi
Loc.	yāyaṃ, yassaṃ	yāsu

314. Neuter, **yam**, it; which; that which.

Nom.	yaṃ, yad	yāni
Gen.	yassa	yesaṃ
Dat.	yassa	yesaṃ
Acc.	yaṃ, yad	yāni
Ins.	yena	yehi, yebhi
Abl.	yasmā, yamhā	yehi, yebhi
Loc.	yasmiṃ, yamhi	yesu

*Remarks.* (a) For the sake of greater emphasis, the Personal Pronouns, and also *so*, *ayaṃ* and *eso* are used pleonastically with *yo*.



(b) Yo is used with *koci* (323), in the three Genders, as *yo koci*, *yena kenaci*, *yam kiñci*, etc., both pronouns together meaning: whosoever, whoever, whatever, anyone, anything, etc.

(c) The form *yad* of the Neuter singular, is used before vowels and in composition.

(d) The base of *yo* is *ya*.

### 315. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

#### DECLENSION OF **KO**, **KĀ**, **KIM**.

316. Masculine, **ko**, who? what?

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	ko	ke
Gen.	kassa, kissa	kesam, kesānam
Dat.	kassa, kissa	kesam, kesānam
Acc.	kañ	ke
Ins.	kena	kehi, kebhi
Abl.	kasmā, kañhā	kehi, kebhi
Loc.	kasmim, kañhi kismim, kimhi	kesu

317. Feminine, **kā**, who? what?

Nom.	kā	kā, kāyo
Gen.	kāya, kassā	kāsam, kāsānam
Dat.	kāya, kassā	kāsam, kāsānam
Acc.	kañ	kā, kāyo
Ins.	kāya	kāhi, kābhi
Abl.	kāya	kāhi, kābhi
Loc.	kāya, kassā kāyam, kassam	kāsu

318. Neuter, **kiṃ**, what?

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	kiṃ	kāni
Gen.	kissa, kassa	kesaṃ, kesānaṃ
Dat.	kissa, kassa	kesaṃ, kesānaṃ
Acc.	kiṃ	kāni
Ins.	kena	kehi, kebhi
Abl.	kasmā, kamaḥ	kehi, kebhi
Loc.	kismiṃ, kimhi kasmim, kamhi	kesu

*Remarks.* (a) The base of *ko* assumes several forms: *ka*, *ku* (*kud*), *ki* (*kid*).

(b) *kud* and *kid* are used before vowels and in composition.

### 319. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

320. The Indefinite Pronouns are formed by adding *ci* (*cid*), *api* and *cana*, to the *Interrogative Pronouns*.

321. *ci*, or, before a vowel *cid*, is the suffix most commonly used to form these pronouns.

322. *canaṃ* = *cana*, is also found; both are sometimes shortened to *ca*.

### DECLENSION OF **KOCI**, **KACI**, AND **KAÑCI**.

323. Masculine **koci**, any, some, anyone.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	koci	keci
Gen.	kassaci	kesaṇci
Dat.	kassaci	kesaṇci
Acc.	kañci, kiñci	keci

*Singular.**Plural.*

Ins.	kenaci	kehici
Abl.	kasmāci	kehici
Loc.	kasmiñci, kamhici	kesuci
	kismiñci, kimhici	kesuci

324. Feminine **kāci**, any, some, anything.

Nom.	kāci	kāci, kāyoci
Gen.	kāyaci, kassāci	kāsañci
Dat.	kāyaci, kassāci	kāsañci
Acc.	kañci	kāci, kāyoci
Ins.	kāyaci	kāhici
Abl.	kāyaci	kāhici
Loc.	kāyaci, kāyañci	kāsuci
	kassañci	

325. Neuter, **kinci**, any, some, anything.

The Neuter is declined like the Masculine except :

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom.	Acc.	kiñci	kānici
------	------	-------	--------

326. By placing *na*, not, before the Indefinite Pronouns we get the meanings : none, no one, nothing, etc.

326. *ci*, *cana*, may also be placed after *adverbs*, to give them an indefinite sense, as :

kuhiṃ, where?	kuhiñci, kuhiñcanaṃ, anywhere.
kudā, when?	kudācanaṃ, ever, sometimes.
kadā, when?	kādāci, sometimes.

## OTHER PRONOUNS.

328. *Attā*, self, own, ownself (154), is very much used as a Reflexive Pronoun; so also are; *ātumā*, self, own, etc., which is but another form of *attā*, and very rarely used in Buddhist writings; *tuma*, having the same meaning, is still less frequent.

329. In composition the bases are: *atta*, *atuma* and *tuma*.

330. *sayam*, oneself, by oneself and *sāmaṃ*, self, both indeclinable, are often used as Reflexive Emphatic Pronouns.

331. *attā*, *ātumā* and *tuma* are properly nouns used pronominally.

332. A few other nouns are thus used pronominally; the following are the most usual.

333. *bhavam*, lord, sir (166). It is a very respectful term of address, used for the Second Pers. Pronoun; the verb is put in Third Person.

334. *Ayya*, lord, master; a Buddhist monk; it is used chiefly in addressing Buddhist monks, and is then often used with *bhante* (166).

335. *Avuso*, friend, brother; is also used as a pronoun sometimes. It is used mostly by senior monks to junior monks. *Avuso* is indeclinable.

**Possessive Pronouns.**

336. A few Possessive Pronouns are formed from the *bases* of the *first* and *second* Personal Pronouns by means of suffixes : *īya* and *aka*; the vowel of the bases being sometimes lengthened before *aka*.

*Base.**Possessive Pronoun.*

mad (289, a)	madiya,	'mine, my, my own.
mam (289, a)	māmaka, mamaka,	mine, my, my own.
amhad (289, d)	amhadiya,	ours, our own.
tad (290. a)	tadiya,	thine, thy, thy own.
tava (Gen.)	tāvaka,	thine, thy, thy own.

*Remarks.* (a) *āmaka*, *mamaka*, as well as *tāvaka*, may be derived from the singular genitive form by the addition of *ka*.

(d) The above Pronouns are declined like *deva*, *kaññā* and *rūpaṃ*.

337. A great number of adjectives and adverbs are derived from pronominal bases by means of suffixes, the principal of which are the following :—

(a) *di* (*dī*), *disa*, *disaka*, *riśa*, *tara*, *tama*, *ka*.

(b) *dā*, *dāni*, *tra*, *tha*, *thā*, *thaṃ*, *ti*, *to*, *va* (*vat*),  
*rahi*, *haṃ*, *ha*, *hiṃ*, *va*, *vaṃ*, *di*.

The former (a) are used to form adjectives, and the latter (b) adverbs.

The following are the principal derivatives by means of the above suffixes.

338.

## ADJECTIVES.

339. *di* (*dī*), *disa*, *disaka* and *risa*, express *likeness, resemblance*; the vowel of the stem being lengthened before them.

## EXAMPLES.

*Pronominal base.**Adjective.*

*ma* (289, *a*) *mādī*, *mādi*, *mādisa*, *mārisa*, like me, such as I.

*ta* (290, *a*) *tādi*, *tādisa*, *tādisaka*, like him, like that, such.

*amha* (289, *d*) *amhādisa*, like us.

*tumha* (290, *b*) *tumhādisa*, like you.

*i* (307, *a*) *īdī*, *idi*, *īdisa*, *īrisa*, *īdisaka*, like this, such as this.

*e* (304) *edī*, *edi*, *edisā*, *erisa*, like this, such as this.

*eta* (298, 302) *etādisa*, *etārisa*, such as this or that, such.

*ki* (318, *a, b*) *kīdī*, *kidi*, *kīdisa*, *kīrisa*, like what? of what kind?

340. The suffix *dikkha*, has the same meaning as *disa*, etc. It is obtained by assimilation from the Sanskrit *dr̥kṣa*. Hence we have also the forms :

*tādikkha* = *tādisa*

*kīdikkha* = *kīdisa*

*edikkha* = *edisā*

*īdikkha* = *īdisa*, etc.

341. In *edi*, *edisā*, etc., the stem *i* is strengthened (105), in *īdisa*, etc., it is merely lengthened (19).

342. *Tara* and *tama*, which are used for the comparison of adjectives (238), are also added to the *interrogative stem* to form Pronominal Adjectives which, in meaning, differ but little from the single stem. Hence we have :

katara, which ? what ?

katama, which ? what ?

343. Some adjectives assume a rather anomalous form ; such are, for instance : *kittaka*, *tattaka*, *yattaka*, *ettaka*, etc. A glance will suffice to show that they are formed on pronominal bases : *ya*, *eta*, *ki*, (*ka*), etc. The difficulty is to account (for most of them) for the *double tt*. It is obvious these adjectives were formed by adding the adjectival suffix *ka*, to the Adverbial Instrumentive in *tā* (from *vat*, *vant* : *cf.*, Sansk. *tāvatā* from *tāvat* ; *yāvatā*, from *yāvat*). The Pāli forms are simply contractions from the Sanskrit forms ; as : *tāvatā* + *ka* = *tāvatāka* : the loss of medial *va* being compensated by the doubling of the last *tā* ; the *ā* being shortened before *ka*, and the *ā* of the first *tā* as well, according to euphonic laws. So that :

*kittaka*, how much ? How many ? How great ?

*kittaka*, = \**kīvatāka*.

*ettako*, so great, so much, so many.

*ettako*, = \**etāvatāka*.

*yattaka* however much ; however big or large.

*yattaka*, = *yāvatāka*.

*tattaka*, as many, as great, as big or large.

*tattaka*, = *tāvatāka*.

But *cf.* also such Sansk. forms as : *iyattaka* (*i-yad-ta-ka*) ; *kiyattaka* (*ki-yad-ta-ka*).

The form *etta* = *ettaka*, may be accounted for by the further dropping of final *ka*, the adverb *etto*, thence,

is probably a contracted form *etato* (*Abl.* of *etāṃ*); in *ettavatā*, = *etāvat*, the consonant of the base is doubled.

### 344. (b) ADVERBIAL DERIVATIVES.

Adverbial derivatives from pronominal bases constitute a large and useful class of words.

The principal suffixes used to form these adverbs have been given above (337, *b*). We will give here a few examples of such formation.

345. *dā*, *dāni*, *rahi* express *time*.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Pronominal base.*

*Adverb.*

*ka* (318, *a*) *karahi*, *kadā*, when.

*i* (307, *a*) *idāni*, now; at this time.

*ta* (290, *a*) *tarahi*, *tadā*, *tadāni*, then; at that time.

*eta* (298 302) *etarahi*, now.

346. *to*, *tra*, *tha*, *dha*, *ha*, *haṃ*, *hiṃ*, form adverbs of *place*. Before a short vowel the *t* of *tha* is doubled.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Pronominal base.*

*Adverb.*

*ka*, *ku* (318, *a*) *kattha*, *kutra*, *kuttha*, *kahaṃ*, *kuhaṃ*,  
*kuhiṃ*, where? whither? wherein?  
 in what place?

*ya* (314, *d*) *yatra*, *yattha*, where, wherein, whither.

*ya* *yato*, from what.

*e* (304) *ettha*, here, herein.

*a* (307, *a*) *atra*, *attha*, here.

*ta* (290, *a*) *tattha*, *tatra*, *tahaṃ*, *tahiṃ*, there,  
 thither.



*Pronominal base.**Adverb.*

ta	tato, thence, from that place.
i (307, a)	iha, idha, here, in this place.
i	ito, hence, from this place.
eta (298, 302)	etto, (through etato 343), hence.

347. thā, va, vaṃ, thaṃ, ti form adverbs of *manner*.

ta	tathā, thus, so, like that.
ka	kathaṃ, how?
i	itthaṃ, thus, in this manner.
i	iva, like this, as, as it were.
i	iti, thus, in this manner.
e	eva, evaṃ, so, just so.
ya	yathā, as, like.

348. Another suffix *va*, from *vat* (=Sansk. *vat*), forms adverbs of *time* and *cause* from the pronominal bases *tā*, *ya*, *ki*. The final *t* of *vat* is dropped according to the phonetic laws obtaining in Pāli, which do not suffer any consonant to remain at the end of a word, except *ṃ*; before a vowel, however, the final *t* is revived in the form of a *d*; as for instance: *tāva*, but; *tāvad eva*.

*Pronominal base.**Adverb.*

ya	yāva, until; as long as; in order that
ta	tāva, so long, still, yet.

*Remarks.* Final *a* of the base is lengthened before *va* (*vat*), which, as we have seen already (219, ff), forms adjectives from nouns.

The *Abl. sing.* suffix *tā* is also added to such forms as the above.

## EXAMPLES.

- yāvatā, as far as, because.
- tāvatā, so far, to that extent, on that account.

From other pronominal bases we have :

*Pronominal base.*

*Adverb.*

eta (298)

ettāvatā, to that extent, so far, thus.

ki (318, a)

kittāvatā, to what extent? how far?

349. It has been seen that by adding *ka* to these forms we obtain adjectives of cognate meaning.

350. The suffix *di*, expressing *condition*, is found only in *yadi*, if.

351. The suffix *ti*, is found in : *kati*, how many ? *yati*, as many, and *tati*, so many.

352. Certain *Case-forms* of pronouns are used adverbially. They will be considered in the Chapter on Adverbs.

#### ADJECTIVES DECLINED PRONOMINALLY.

353. A few adjectives take the pronominal declension. They are :

katara, which ? what ?

ubhaya, both.

katama, which ? what ?

itara, other, different.

añña, other, another

aññatara, one, a certain, another

aññatama, one of several, a certain

pubba, first, former.

para, distant, other

apara, subsequent, other.

dakkhiṇa, right (not the left)

uttara, upper, higher.

adhara, lower, inferior

vissa, all.

amuka, so and so, such

asuka, so and so, such.

(310, c)

## CHAPTER X.

### VERBS.

354. Conjugation, or the inflection of verbs, consists in making the verbal root undergo certain changes in form, by the addition to it of certain prefixes and terminations, to show the difference of Voice, of Tense, of Mode, of Person, and of Number.

355. There are two voices :

- (1) The *Active*, called in Pāli *Parassapada* (lit. a word for another) and
- (2) The *Reflective*, in Pāli called *Attanopada* (lit. a word for one's self).

356. The Active Voice, or *Parassapada* may be said to be used, when the fruit or consequence of the action expressed by the verb passes on to person or thing other than the *subject* or *agent*; the Reflective Voice or *Attanopada*, is used when the fruit or the consequence expressed by the verb accrues to no one else but to the agent. The Reflective Voice merely implies that the agent has the ability to do that action or suffer that state which is denoted by the Root.

357. It must here be remarked that the Reflective Voice has lost very much of its importance, and that the distinction between Active or Reflective has been almost, if not altogether, effaced, and that the choice between Active or Reflective is mostly determined now by metrical exigencies. It, therefore, follows the Reflective Voice or the "Middle Voice," as it is also called, is confined to poetry, and is but rarely found in prose.

358. There are six Tenses :

- (1) The *Present*; and its preterite :
- (2) The *Imperfect*; used originally to express a definite past.

- (3) The *Aorist*, expressing time recently past. This is now the only true past tense in Pāli, and is very extensively used.
- (4) The *Perfect*, originally an indefinite past. This tense is of very rare occurrence.
- (5) The *Future* expressing future time in general and its preterite.
- (6) The *Conditional*, expressing future time relatively to something that is past, and an action unable to be performed on account of some difficulty in the way of its execution.

359. There are three Modes of the Present Tense:

- (1) The *Indicative*,
- (2) The *Imperative*, and
- (3) The *Optative*.

360. The Present, the Perfect and the Future Tenses have each a Participle, called after them:

- (1) The Present *Participle*.
- (2) The Perfect *Participle*, and
- (3) The Future *Participle*.

*Remarks.* The Perfect Participle, mostly formed from the Root, is principally of past and passive meaning: sometimes also of neuter meaning.

361. There is also a Participle of Necessity, also called Future Passive Participle and Potential Participle, which is but a Verbal Adjective.

362. According to the Base on which they are formed, the Present and the Future Participles may be *Active* or *Passive* in sense.

363. There are two Verbal Nouns :

(1) The *Infinitive*, in the Accusative Case-form; sometimes (rarely) in the Dative Case-form; which has nothing to do with the Conjugation and the Tense-Systems; and has the sense of a regular Infinitive.

(1) A *Gerund* so-called, which is but the Case-form of a derivative noun having the force of an absolute participle.

364. There are two Numbers : the Singular and the Plural.

365. There are three Persons : the First, Second and Third Persons.

366. From what has been said above, it will be seen that the tenses group themselves into four well-defined classes or systems :

(1) The *Present System*, composed of :

(a) The Present Indicative, and its preterite :

(b) The Imperfect ;

(c) The Present Imperative ;

(d) The Present Optative, and

(e) The Present Participle.

(2) The *Aorist System*, composed of ;  
The Aorist Tense only.

(3) The *Perfect System*, comprising ;

(a) The Perfect Tense, and

(b) The Perfect Participle.

(4) The *Future System*, composed of :

- (a) The Future Tense :
- (b) The Conditional, *and*
- (c) The Future Participle.

367. There is a division of the tenses, more fictitious than real, into "Special Tenses" and "General Tenses", from such a division, one would be inclined to think that the former are formed on a *special base* or modified form of the root, and the latter, therefore, from the root itself. But such in fact is not the case, for it will later on be remarked that the special and the general tenses not seldom interchange their bases.

368. As, however, the *Present System* is by far the most important, and as it is made the basis of the different Conjugations or Classifications of Verbs, we will, in the next section, explain the formation of the several stems or bases of the Present System (otherwise called "Special Tenses,") of which there are ten, divided into *Seven Conjugations*.

These bases are in consequence called "*Special Bases*."

369. The Conjugation of Verbs is furthermore divided into Primitive and Derivative Conjugations.

#### (A) PRIMITIVE VERBS.

Formation of the **special bases** of the **Present System**.

#### Conjugation.

370. The verbs of the **First Conjugation** form the Present stem or base in four ways, as follows :

(1) The roots end in a consonant, and to form the base or stem, simply add A.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
pac, to cook	paca
labh, to obtain	labha
mar, to die	mara
rakkh, to keep, guard	rakkha
yāc, to entreat, beg	yāca
vad, to tell, say	vada
tar, to cross	tara
jīv, to live	jīva
bhar, to carry	bhara

371. To this division belong those roots which, ending in a consonant preceded by *i* or *u*, sometimes do, and sometimes do not, strengthen the vowel (*i*, *u*)

## EXAMPLES.

*(Without Strengthening.)*

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
tud, to know, destroy	tuda
phus, to touch	phusa
likh, to write	likha
nud, to remove	nuda

*(With Strengthening.)*

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
gup, to keep, watch	gopa
subh, to shine, be beautiful	sobha

(2) The roots of this division do not take the conjugational sign *a*: the personal endings of the tenses are added directly to the root.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
yā, to go	yā
vā, to blow	vā

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
ṭhā, to stand	ṭhā
khyā, to tell (with prefix)	khyā
brū, to speak	brū

*Remarks.* (a) To this class may be said to belong the roots ending in *i*, *ī*, or *u*, *ū* which, when *a* is added to them, do not take their semi-vowel substitute, but are merely gunated (109, 104—107).

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i> <sup>a</sup>	<i>Bases.</i>
nī, to lead	ne (or naya) (3rd Division)
ji, to conquer	je (or jaya) (3rd Division)
hū, to be	ho
ku, to sound	ko (or kava) (3rd Division)

(b) To these transformed roots, which at first sight appear to be pure roots, the personal endings are added, as after the roots *yā*, *vā*, *thā*, etc. (2nd Division).

(c) So that these roots assume two special bases : one in *e* or *aya*, and one in *o* or *ava*, according as the last vowel is *i*, *ī* or *u*, *ū*.

(3) The roots of this division end in *i*, *ī* or *u*, *ū* which, before the conjugational sign *a*, are respectively changed to *ay* and *av* (103—110).

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
nī, to lead, guide	(√ nī + a =) naya
ji, to conquer	(√ ji + a =) jaya
bhū, to be	(√ bhū + a =) bhava



<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases</i>
ku, to make a sound	(√ ku + a =) kava
khi, to govern	(√ khi + a =) khaya

(See above No. 2, Remarks (a, c),

(4) The verbs of the *Fourth* Division of the First Conjugation form their special bases by reduplicating the root.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
thā, to stand	tiṭṭhā
dā, to give	dadā
dhā, to hold	dadhā
hā, to forsake	jahā
hū, to sacrifice	juho

*Remark.* These retain the long *ā* before the Personal endings of the Present and of the Imperative.

372. The Rules of Reduplication are as follows :

(1) Reduplication consists in the doubling of the first consonant of a root together with the vowel that follows it.

If the root begins with a vowel, that vowel alone is reduplicated.

(2) A *guttural* is reduplicated by its corresponding *palatal*.

(3) An *unaspirate* is always reduplicated by an *unaspirate* (page 2,); which means that an *unaspirate* is reduplicated by itself.

(4) The initial *h* of a root is reduplicated by *j*.

(5) An *aspirate* is reduplicated by its *unaspirate*.

- (6) *V* is generally reduplicated by *u*.  
 (7) A long vowel is shortened in the reduplicated syllable. That is:
- (a) *a* or *ā* takes *a* in reduplication, and sometimes *i*.
  - (b) *i* or *ī* takes *i*.
  - (c) *u* or *ū* takes *u* but sometimes *a*.
  - (d) *i* is occasionally changed to *e*.
  - (e) *u* is changed to *o* sometimes.
  - (f) *a* of the root, following the first consonant, is sometimes changed to *ā*; that is, it is lengthened.

## EXAMPLES.

*Simple roots.**Reduplicated bases.*

dhā, to hold	(Rule 372, 5, 7— <i>a</i> )	dadhā
dā, to give	(Rule 372, 3, 7— <i>a</i> )	dadā
kit, to cure	(Rule 372, 2, 7— <i>b</i> ; 88).	cikiccha
gam, to go	(Rule 372, 2, 7— <i>a</i> )	jagama
khan, to dig	(Rule 372, 2, 7— <i>a</i> )	cakhana
har, to bear	(Rule 372, 4, 7— <i>a</i> and <i>f</i> )	jahāra
has, to laugh	(Rule 372, 4, 7— <i>a</i> and <i>f</i> )	jahāsa
budh, to know	(Rule 372, 3, 7— <i>e</i> )	bubodha
suc, to mourn	(Rule 372, 3, 7— <i>e</i> )	susoca
pac, to cook	(Rule 372, 3, 7— <i>a</i> )	papaca
chid, to cut	(Rule 372, 5, 7— <i>d</i> )	cicheda
bhū, to be	(Rule 372, 5, 7— <i>c</i> )	babhuva
vas, to live	(Rule 372, 6, 7— <i>f</i> )	uvāsa
vad, to say	(Rule 372, 6, 7— <i>f</i> )	uvāda
ah, to say	(Rule 372, 1; 22)	āha

*Remarks.* The above rules of reduplication apply as well to the Perfect Tense; but as the Perfect is very seldom used in Pāli, the student ought not to assume the existence of any form unless it be actually found in the course of his reading.

373. The Verbs of the **Second Conjugation** form their Special Bases by inserting *niggahīta* before the last consonant of the root, and then adding *a*, as in the First Conjugation. *Niggahīta* follows the usual rules of Sandhi (39).

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
rudh, to restrain	rundha
muc, to free	muñca
chid, to cut	chinda
lip, to smear	limpa
bhuj, to eat	bhuñja
pis, to grind	piṃsa

374. The sign of the **Third Conjugation** is *ya*, which is added to the root; the rules for the Assimilation of *y* (7off) are regularly applied.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>		<i>Bases.</i>
yudh, to fight	(√yudh + ya (74, vi) =	yujjha
budh, to know	(√budh + ya (74, vi) =	bujjha
pas, to see	(√pas + ya (76, i) =	passa
dus, to vex	(√dus + ya (76, i) =	dussa
gā, to sing	(√gā + ya ) =	gāya
jhā, to think	(√jhā + ya ) =	jhāya

*Remarks.* The roots of this conjugation ending in long *ā*, are sometimes given under the form of *e* also; thus :

ge=gā, to sing.

ve=vā, to weave.

jhe=jhā, to think, meditate.

375. The forms in *ā* (gā, etc.) belong, as we have already seen, to the Third Conjugation, but those in *e* belong to the First Conjugation (3rd Division), and form their bases by the addition of *a*. Thus :

ge+a=gāya.

ve+a=vāya.

*Remarks.* Note well that final *e+a=āya* with lengthening of the first *a*.

376. The Verbs of the **First Conjugation** form the present Stem or Base by the addition of *ṇu*, or *ṇā* if the root end in a vowel; but *uṇu* or *uṇā* if the root end in a consonant.

*Remarks.* (a) The *u* of *ṇu* and *uṇu* may be strengthened to *o*.

(b) This *u* or *o* may, before a personal ending beginning with a vowel, be changed to *va* (27, ii a, b).

#### EXAMPLES.

Roots.	Bases.
su, to hear	suṇā or suṇo
āp (with prefix pa=pāp) to attain	pāpuṇā or pāpuṇo

(c) The long *ā* of *ṇā*, *uṇā* is retained before the Personal endings of the Present and of the Imperative except the 3rd Person Plural. Occasionally, however, it is found shortened.

(d) In a few cases the *ṇ* is *de-lingualised* and changed to the dental nasal, *viz*, *n*, following in this the analogy of the Sanskrit.

377. Verbs of the **Fifth Conjugation** form their bases by adding *nā* to the root, which as a rule ends in a vowel.

*Remarks.* (a) If the final vowel of the root is long (2), it is shortened before *nā*.

(b) Under the influence of a *preceding* Sanskrit *r* or *ṛ*, *nā* is sometimes lingualised and becomes *ṇā*.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
ci, to heap, collect	cinā.
ki, to buy, barter (Sans. <i>krī</i> )	kīnā or kinā.
dhū, to shake	dhunā.
ji, to conquer, win	jinā.
ās, to eat	aśnā.
jā, to know	jānā.
yu, to mix, associate	yunā

*Remarks.* The long *a* of *nā* is retained in all the persons of the Present and Imperative, except in the 3rd Plural. The short form in *na* is also often found.

378. The Verbs of the **Sixth Conjugation** form their Special Bases by adding *u* to the root; this *u* generally strengthens to *o*, which before an ending beginning with a vowel is changed to *va* (27).

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots.</i>	<i>Bases.</i>
kar, to do, make	karo
tan, to stretch, expand	tano
kuṇ, to make a sound	kuṇo
van, to beg, ask for	vano

*Remarks.* (a) The conjugation of *Jkar*, highly irregular and formed on several bases, will be given in full later on.

(b) The roots belonging to this Conjugation are remarkably few.

379. The Verbs of the **Seventh Conjugation** form their Special Bases by adding to the root *aya*, which by contraction may be replaced by *e*. The forms in *e* are more commonly met with than those in *aya*. (Compare: 1st Conjugation, 3rd Division).

*Remarks.* The following should be carefully noted:

(a) When the radical vowel is *u*, it is changed to *o*, provided it be not followed by a Conjunct Consonant.

(b) Radical *a*, if followed by a single Consonant, is generally lengthened, in some cases, however, it remains short.

(c) It will be perceived from the above that the verbs of the Seventh Conjugation have two bases: one in *e* and one in *aya* (Compare: 1st Conjugation, 3rd Division).

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Roots</i>	<i>Bases</i>
cur, to steal	core or coraya
gup, to guard, shine	gope or gopaya
pus, to nourish	pose or posaya
bandh, to bind	bandhe or bandhaya
tīr, to finish, accomplish	tīre or tīraya
chadd, to throw away	chaddē or chaddaya
kath, to say	kathe or kathaya

380. A great many roots can form their bases according to two or three or even most Conjugations, in which case the meaning of each Special Base from the same root, differs, in most instances, from the original meaning of the root itself. This will be better understood by several examples. The numbers after the bases refer to the Conjugations.

## EXAMPLES.

*Roots.**Bases.*

subh	sobha (1), to shine : $\sqrt{\text{subh}} + a = \text{sobha}$ .
subh	sumbha (2), strike : $\sqrt{\text{subh}} + m + a = \text{sumbha}$ .
kus	kosa (1), to call, cut : $\sqrt{\text{kus}} + a = \text{kosa}$ .
kus	kussa (3), to embrace : $\sqrt{\text{kus}} + ya, \text{ kusya} = \text{kussa (76)}$ .
tik	teka (1), to go : $\sqrt{\text{tik}} + a = \text{teka}$ .
tik	tikuṇā (4), to oppress : $\sqrt{\text{tik}} + uṇā = \text{tikuṇā}$ .
rī	re (1), to expand : $\sqrt{\text{rī}} + a = \text{re}$ .
rī	rīṇā, (5), to inform : $\sqrt{\text{rī}} + ṇā = \text{rīṇā}$ .
lī	laya (1), to liquify : $\sqrt{\text{lī}} + a = \text{laya}$ .
lī	līnā (4), to approach : $\sqrt{\text{lī}} + nā = \text{līnā}$ .
tan	tana (1), to aid, assist : $\sqrt{\text{tan}} + a = \text{tana}$ .
tan	tano (6), to expand, stretch : $\sqrt{\text{tan}} + u (=o) = \text{tano}$ .
vaḍḍh	vaḍḍha (1), to grow, increase, $\sqrt{\text{vaḍḍh}} + a = \text{vaḍḍha}$ .
vaḍḍh	vaḍḍhe (7), to pour from one vessel into another : $\sqrt{\text{vaḍḍh}} + e = \text{vaḍḍhe}$ .
vid	vida (1), to know : $\sqrt{\text{vid}} + a = \text{vida}$ .
vid	vijja (3), to be, have : $\sqrt{\text{vid}} + ya = \text{vidya} = \text{vijja}$ .
vid	vind (2), to find, get, enjoy : $\sqrt{\text{vid}} + m + a = \text{vinda}$ .
vid	vede, vedaya (7), to feel, speak : $\sqrt{\text{vid}} + e = \text{vede or vedaya}$ .

## CONJUGATION OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM.

*First Conjugation.*

381. The bases of the verbs having been formed according to the rules given in the preceding paragraphs, there only remains to add to them the appropriate Personal Endings. We now give the Personal Endings for the tense of the Present-System, which is by far the most important, omitting the Present Participle, which will be treated in a special chapter.

*Present Indicative.*

<i>Pers. Active. Voice.</i>		<i>Pers. Reflective. Voice.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. mi	ma	e	mhe
2. si	tha	se	vhe
3. ti	nti	te	nte, re

*Imperfect.*

1. a, aṃ	amhā	im	mhase
2. o	ttha	se	vham
3. a	u	ttha	tthum

*Imperative.*

1. mi	ma	e	ānase
2. hi	tha	ssu	vho
3. tu	ntu	taṃ	ntaṃ

*Optative.*

1. eyyāmi	eyyāma	eyyaṃ	eyyāmhe
2. eyyāsi	eyyātha	etho	eyyavho
3. eyya	eyyum	etha	eram



*Remarks.* (a) In the *singular* Optative Active Voice, *e* may be substituted for *eyyāmi*, *eyyāsi* and *eyya*.

(b) The vowel of the base is dropped before a Personal Ending beginning with a vowel.

(c) Before *mi* and *ma* of the Present Indicative, the *a* of the base is lengthened.

(d) In the 2nd person singular Active of the Imperative, *hi* may be dropped and the base or stem alone used. Note that before *hi* the *a* of the base is lengthened.

382. As has been said above (370), the First Conjugation has four divisions. The roots ending in a consonant and adding *a* to form the base, are extremely numerous.

383. The following is the paradigm of √**pac**, to cook.

*Present Indicative.*

I cook, etc.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Reflective.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. <i>pacāmi</i>	<i>pacāma</i>	<i>pace</i>	<i>pacāmhe</i>
2. <i>pacasi</i>	<i>pacatha</i>	<i>pacase</i>	<i>pacavhe</i>
3. <i>pacati</i>	<i>pacanti</i>	<i>pacate</i>	<i>pacante</i> <i>pacare</i>

*Imperfect.*

I cooked, etc.

1. <i>apaca</i> <i>apacāmi</i>	<i>apacamhā</i>	<i>apaciṃ</i>	<i>apacāmhase</i> <i>apacamhase</i>
2. <i>apaco</i>	<i>apacattha</i>	<i>apacase</i>	<i>apacavham</i>
3. <i>apaca</i>	<i>apacu</i>	<i>apacattha</i>	<i>apacatthum</i>

*Imperative.*

Let me cook, etc.

*Active.**Reflective.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. pacāmi	pacāma	pace	pacāmase
2. pacāhi	pacatha	pacassu	pacavho
pacā			
3. pacatu	pacantu	pacatañ	pacantañ

*Optative.*

I may, should, can, could—cook, etc.

1. paceyyāmi	paceyyāma	paceyyañ	paceyyāmhe
pace			
2. paceyyāsi	paceyyātha	pacetho	paceyyavho
pace			
3. paceyya	paceyyuñ	pacetha	pacerañ
pace			

*Remarks.* (a) The Augment *a* of the Imperfect may be omitted, so that we also have the forms : *paca*, *pacañ*, *paco*, etc.

(b) The final vowel of the 3rd person singular active may also be long : *apacā*, *apacū*.

384. The above Personal Endings of the Special Tenses are affixed to the Special Base of the seven Conjugations, after the model of *√pac*.

385. Roots of the 1st Conjugation in *i*, *ī* and *u*, *ū* require no explanations. The base being obtained 371, 3), the above Endings are merely added to it.

*√bhū*, to be; *base*; *bhava* *√nī*, to lead; *base*, *naya*.

*Present.*

## ACTIVE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. bhavāmi	bhavāma	nayāmi	nayāma
2. bhavasi	bhavātha	nayasi	nayatha
3. bhavati	bhavanti	nayati	nayanti

## REFLECTIVE.

1. bhave	bhavāmhe	naye	nayāmhe
2. bhavase	bhavavhe	nayase	nayavhe
3. bhavate	bhavante	nayate	nayante

*Imperfect.*

## ACTIVE.

1. abhava abhavam	abhavamhā	anaya anayam	anayamhā
2. abhavo	abhavattha	anayo	anayattha
3. abhava	abhavu	anaya	anayu

## REFLECTIVE.

1. abhaviṃ	abhavāmhase	anayiṃ	anayāmhase
2. abhavase	abhavavham	anayase	anayavham
3. abhavattha	abhavatthum	anayattha	anayatthum

*Imperative.*

## ACTIVE.

1. bhavāmi	bhavāma	nayāmi	nayāma
2. bhavāhi bhava	bhavatha	nayāhi naya	nayatha
3. bhavatu	bhavantu	nayatu	nayantu

## REFLECTIVE.

1. bhave	bhavāmase	naye	nayāmase
2. bhavassu	bhavavho	nayassu	nayavho
3. bhavataṃ	bhavantaṃ	nayataṃ	nayantaṃ

## Optative.

## ACTIVE.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	bhaveyyāmi,	bhaveyyāma	nayeyyāmi,	nayeyyāma
	bhave		naye	
2.	bhaveyyāsi,	bhaveyyātha	nayeyyāsi,	nayeyyātha
	bhave		naye	
3.	bhāveyya,	bhaveyyuṃ	nayeyya,	nayeyyuṃ
	bhave		naye	

## REFLECTIVE.

1.	bhaveyyaṃ	bhaveyyāmhē	nayeyyaṃ	nayeyyāmhē
2.	bhavetho	bhaveyyavho	nayetho,	nayeyyavho
3.	bhavetha	bhaveraṃ	nayetha	nayeraṃ

386. The roots of the first conjugation which take the Personal Endings directly (371, 2) are not numerous.

387. It must be here noted that in Pāli all the roots are not conjugated in the Active and the Reflective Voices for all the tenses. Especially so is the case with the roots that take the Personal Endings directly.

## EXAMPLES.

√**yā**, to go; √**vā**, to blow; √**bhā**, to shine :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	yāmi	yāma	vāmi	vāma	bhāmi	bhāma
2.	yāsi	yātha	vāsi	vātha	bhāsi	bhātha
4.	yāti	yanti	vāti	vanti	bhāti	bhantī

Remarks. Before *nti*, 3rd Plural, *ā* of the root is shortened.

388. In the Optative, a *y* is inserted before the Personal Endings :

yāyeyyāmi, yāyeyya; vāyeyya, vāye, etc., etc.

389. Some roots of this class are gunated (110) generally in the Reflective and 3rd Plural Present Active: √**brū** to speak.

*Active.*

*Reflective.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. brūmi	brūma	brave	brūmhe
2. brūsi	brūtha	brūse	brūvhe
3. brūti	bravanti	brute	bravante

*Remarks.* In the Plural 1st and 2nd Persons Reflective, the *u* is sometimes found shortened.

390. Other roots of this conjugation are :

√**han**, to strike, kill, 3rd singular = hanti, but 3rd plural = hananti.

In the Aorist we have : ahani, hani, etc.

√**i** to go, strengthened to *e*; the weak base *ya* is also used (cf. 1st Conjugation, 3rd division, such roots as *nī* : strong base *ne* and weak base *naya*. Similarly, *jī* : strong base *je* and weak base *jaya*.) We therefore obtain—

1. emi	ema
2. esi	etha
3. eti	enti and yanti.

√**thā**, to stand, thāti, thāsi, etc.

√**pā**, to guard, protect, pāti, pāsi, etc.

*Remarks.* (a) Roots of this class may, like others belonging to different Conjugations, be compounded with Verbal Prefixes.

#### EXAMPLES.

√**khyā**, to tell + ā = ākhyā + ti = ākhyāti; √**thā** + ni = niṭthā + ti = niṭthāti, to be finished. √**han** + ni = nihan + ti = nihanti, to strike down.

√**i** + upa = upe (21) + ti = upeti, to approach.

(b) the *ā* of *√thā* is shortened to *a*, when the root is reduplicated (1st Conjugation, 4th Division).

(c) *thā*, in composition with Verbal Prefixes, often assumes the Special base *thaha*.

## EXAMPLES.

*√thā + sañ = sañthāti, or sañthahati, or santiṭṭhāti* (See *Niggahīta Sandhi*), to stand.

*√thā + pati = patiṭṭhāti, or patiṭṭhahati*, to stand fast, firmly.

*√thā + ud = uṭṭhāti, or uṭṭhahati*, to stand up.

391. Similarly, *√dhā*, which at first sight would appear to belong to the 1st Conjugation, 2nd Division, de-aspirates itself into *daha*, and migrates into the *√pac* class (370, 1). Moreover, it is used only with Verbal Prefixes. This root also belongs to the reduplicating-class (372) and consequently has also the base *dadhā*. A base *dhe*, of the same root, is extensively used.

## EXAMPLES.

*√dhā* to carry, bear, hold + *ni* = *nidahati, or nida-dhāti, or nidheti*, to put down, hold aside (= lay aside.)

*√dhā + abhi = abhidahati or abhidadhāti or abhi-dheti*, to declare, point out.

392. Some roots belonging to the Reduplicating Class (371, 4th Division), also take the Personal Endings directly in the Present Tense and the Imperative.\*

---

\*Throughout this chapter many Pāli Grammars have been consulted, such as: *Saddanāṭi*, *Nirutti-dīpani*, *Gaḷanpyan*, *Akhyātapadamāla*, etc.

393. By false analogy, some roots in *i* (371, 3rd Division) seem to belong to the class of roots which take the endings directly; but, in reality, these roots belong not to the 2nd Division, but to the 3rd Division, the endings being added, not after the root, but after the strengthened (Chapter IV, p. 33) base, *i* or *ī* having first been changed to *e* under influence of *a* (21, i). Those bases are conjugated exactly like *√cur* base *core*, paradigm of which is given lower down. The Reflective Voice of such roots is formed from the base in *aya*.

## EXAMPLES.

*√nī*, base *ne* or *naya*.

*Present.*

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Reflective.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. nemi	nema	naye	nayāmhe
2. nesi	netha	nayase	nayavhe
3. neti	neti	nayate	nayante

*Imperative.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. nemi	nema	naye	nayāmase
2. nehi	netha	nayassu	nayavho
3. netu	netu	nayatam	nayantam

*Remark.* The Optative may also be formed on the base in *ne*, as :

*Optative.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. neyyāmi	neyyāma	neyyam	neyyāmhe
2. neyyāsi	neyyātha	netho	neyyavho
3. neyya	neyyum	nayetha	nayeram

394. Other roots are :

√si, to lie down, base : se or saya.

√ji, to conquer, base : je or jaya.

√ḍi, to set a net, base : ḍe (in oḍḍeti).

*Remark.* The most important root of the Root-Class is √as, to be, which is rather *defective*; it will be given in a special chapter (*See Defective Verbs*).

### REDUPLICATING CLASS.

395. The verbs of this class are characterised by taking a *reduplicating syllable*: the rules have been given above (372). The conjugation presents no difficulty. For instance : √dā, to give.

#### ACTIVE.

##### *Present.*

##### *Imperfect.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	dadāmi	dadāma		adada	adadamhā
2.	dadāsi	dadātha		adado	adadattha
3.	dadāti	dadanti		adadā	adadu

#### ACTIVE.

##### *Optative.*

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1.	dadeyyāmi		dadeyyāma
2.	dadeyyāsi		dadeyyātha
3.	dadeyya, dade		dadeyyum

#### ACTIVE.

##### *Imperative.*

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1.	dadāmi		dadāma
2.	dadāhi, dadā		dadātha
3.	dadātu		dadantu



396. Some tenses of this verb are formed directly from the base; they will be given in their proper place.

*Remarks.* (a) Of *√dā*, we also find the bases: *daja* and *de*, formed by false analogy: *dajjāmi*, *dajjasi*, *dajjali*; *dajjāma*, *dajjatha*, *dajjanti*, etc., *demi*, *desi*, *deti*; *dema*, *detha*, *dentli*, etc.

(b) There is an anomalous form of the singular Present very probably formed on the analogy of the plural: *dammi*, *ḍasi*, *dati*.

(c) The Reflective forms do not exist for most of the tenses, only a very few are met with: the first singular and the first plural: *dade*, *dadāmase*.

(d) In the root *√tha* the final *ā* of a base is preserved long only in the first singular and plural Present:

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
tiṭṭhāmi	tiṭṭhāma
tiṭṭhasi	tiṭṭhatha, ṭhātha
tiṭṭhati	tiṭṭhanti

It will be remarked that *ṭhātha*, 2nd person plural, is formed directly from the root.

### **The 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th and 7th conjugations.**

397. The conjugation of the 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th and 7th Classes does not present any difficulty; the Personal Endings are added as has already been shewn for the First Conjugation.

#### *Second Conjugation.*

398. *√chid*, base: *chinda* (373), to cut,

*Present (Active).*

<i>Singular.</i>	chindāmi,	chindasi	chindati
<i>Plural.</i>	chindāma	chindatha	chindanti

*Present (Reflective).*

<i>Singular.</i>	chinde	chindase	chindate
<i>Plural.</i>	chindāmhe	chindavhe	chindante

399. The other Tenses are formed regularly, as :  
*chindeyyāmi, chindeyyāsi, chindeyya, or chinde;*  
*chindeyyāma, chindeyyātha, chindeyyum.*

And so on for the other Tenses.

*Remark.* The root **rudh**, to obstruct, has five bases :  
*rundhati, rundhiti, rundhīti, rundheti and rundhoti.*

*Third Conjugation.*

400. √ **div**, base : **dibba** (77), to play.

*Present (Active).*

<i>Singular.</i>	dibbāmi	dibbasi	dibbati
<i>Plural.</i>	dibbāma	dibbatha	dibbanti

*Present (Reflective).*

<i>Singular.</i>	dibbe	dibbase	dibbate
<i>Plural.</i>	dibbāmhe	dibbavhe	dibbante

The other Tenses are formed regularly, as : Imperfect : *adibba, adibbo, adibbā, adibbamhā, adibbattha, adibbu.* Optative : *dibbe, dibbeyya, dibbeyyāmi dibbeyyāsi, etc.*

*Fourth Conjugation.*

401. √ **su**, base : **sunā** (376) or **suno**, to hear.

*Present (Active).*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. suṇāmi	suṇāma	or suṇomi	suṇoma
2. suṇāsi	suṇātha	or suṇosi	suṇotha
3. suṇāti	suṇanti	or suṇoti	suṇonti, sunvantī

*Remarks.* (a) The other Tenses are formed on the base : suṇā, final ā being dropped before initial *i* and *e*, as *suṇeyyāmi*, *suṇeyyāsi*, etc., *suṇissāmi*, *suṇissāma*, *suṇissasi*, etc.

(b) √**sak**, to be able, belongs to this conjugation, but has developed several bases ; **sakkunāti**, with the **k** doubled ; **sakkoti**, by assimilation (57) = sak + no sakno = sakko + ti = sakkoti. Similarly, there is a form **sakkāti**, obtained by the same process ; sak + nā = saknā, sakkā + ti = sakkāti : and still another form occurs, with short *a* : **sakkati**.

(c) √**āp**, to attain, with prefix *pa* (*pa* + *āp* = *pāp*), shows three forms : **pappoti**, **pāpunāti**, **pāpunoti** ; √**gah**, to take, seize, has for base : **gaṇhā**, with metathesis (III, p. 35) : **gaṇhāmi**, **gaṇhāsi**, etc.

(d) We have already said that the **n** is very often *de-lingualized* (376, d). That is to say, many of the roots belonging to the 4th Conjugation form their bases according to the 9th Conjugation of Sanskrit verbs, by adding *nā* to the root. For instance, from √**ci**, to collect, to heap, we have : **cināti**, to gather ; **ocināti**, **ocinati**, to pick up, to gather. *Remark that the base may be with short a as well as with long ā and that this is the case with many of the roots of this Conjugation* cf : **sañcināti**, **sañcinoti**, **sañcināti**, to accumulate.

(e) From  $\sqrt{\text{bhū}}$  we have a verb : abhisambhūnati and abhisambhūnotī, to obtain. The root of this verb is said by some grammarians to be Sanskrit  $\sqrt{\text{bhrī}}$ , but this is most improbable. Some Native grammarians give a root sambhū, found only in the Dhammapada, not perceiving it is merely a compound of prefix sam +  $\sqrt{\text{bhū}}$ .

### *Fifth Conjugation.*

402.  $\sqrt{\text{dhū}}$ , to shake; base **dhunā** (377).

#### *Active.*

#### *Reflective.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. dhunāmi	dhunāma	dhune	dhunāmhe
2. dhunāsi	dhunātha	dhunase	dhunavhe
3. dhunāti	dhunanti	dhunate	dhunante dhunare

*Remarks.* (a) Other verbs belonging to this Class are :  $\sqrt{\text{jñā}}$ . **jā**, **ñā** to know, base : **jānā**;  $\sqrt{\text{as}}$ , to eat, base : **asnā**;  $\sqrt{\text{mun}}$  = **man**, to think, base : **munā**.

(b) The student will have remarked that the 4th and 5th Conjugations very often interchange their bases. This is owing to the false analogy of Sanskrit Roots.\*

---

\*Up to date I did not know that Pali would have to be taught in the B. A. classes but the news has been just received that it is to be taught, and that, moreover, the students in the B. A. will be required to study, to a certain extent, Sanskrit

*Sixth Conjugation.*403. *√kar*, to make, to do, base : **karo** (378).*Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. karomi	karoma
2. karosi	karotha
3. karoti	karonti

*Remarks.* (a) There are several bases of the root **kar**, as : **karo**, **kara**, **kubb** ; the conjugation of this verb, as already said (378, a) will be given in full in the Chapter on Defective Verbs.

*√tan*, to stretch, base : **tano** (strong) ; weak base = **tanu**.

*Present.*

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Reflective.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. tanomi	tanoma	tanve (27)	tanumhe
2. tanosi	tanotha	tanuse	tanuvhe
3. tanoti	tanonti	tanute	tanvante (27)

grammar, thus making its elementary teaching necessary in the F. A. The news is welcome indeed for, as scholars well know, a certain amount of Sanskrit is indispensable to a better understanding of Pāli. The difficulty alluded to on page 22 of the present book, that "the difficulty thus experienced arises from their ignorance of Sanskrit, without a—at least slight—knowledge of which the study of Pāli becomes sensibly more difficult," has now been removed. To meet the new curriculum, a short treatise on Comparative Phonology and Morphology will be prepared as a companion to this grammar, which, we hope, will lighten the tasks of the young student.

(b) The root belonging to this Class are very few.

*Seventh Conjugation.*

404. The roots of the 7th Conjugation, as has been remarked above (379), have two bases; one in *e* and one in *aya*, which are conjugated exactly like the roots of the 1st Conjugation, 3rd Class (See 393).

*Irregular Bases.*

Some roots form their Special bases according to none of the above given rules; and they are in consequence called *Irregular*. The principal are here given.

√gam, to go	Special base gaccha
√yam, to restrain	Special base yaccha
√guh, to hide	Special base gūhe
√dhā, to hold	Special base daha, dhe (391)
√dā, to give	Special base dajja
√jā, jan, to be born	Special base jāya
√pā, to drink	Special base piva
√ḍams, to bite	Special base ḍasa
√dhmā, to blow	Special base dhama
√vyadh (=vadh)	Special base vadha
√sad, to sit	Special base sīda
√thā, to stand	Special base tiṭṭhā
√is, to wish	Special base iccha
√vad, to speak, say	Special base vajja, vajje vada, vāde
√mar, to die	Special base mīya, miyya, mara

√gah, to take, seize	<i>Special base gheppa*</i>
√gam, to go	<i>Special base ghamma,</i> <i>gaggha*</i>
√jir, to grow old, decay	<i>Special base jiya, jiyya</i>
√dis, das, to see	<i>Special base dakkha</i> <i>daccha*</i>

### THE AORIST.

405. The Aorist is the only true past tense in Pāli. The Personal Endings of the Imperfect and those of the Aorist have become hopelessly mixed up and the Native grammarians are at a loss to differentiate between the Imperfect and the Aorist; but the Aorist has generally superseded the Imperfect. There are many anomalies which the student cannot possibly understand without a slight knowledge of Sanskrit grammar; he need not, however, be detained by these considerations just now. The usual Endings of the Imperfect have already been given (351); much will be achieved if he, for the present, devotes his attention to the following paragraphs.

As study of the Chapter on "Comparative Phonology and Morphology" will make clear to him these apparent anomalies.

406. The Aorist is supposed to be formed from the *root* but, as a matter of fact, it is formed indifferently either from the *root* or from the *base*.

\*These forms are given by the Saddanīti and the Akhyatapad-amālā. They are regularly conjugated like *gaccha*: *ghammāmi, ghammasi, ghammati, etc., gagghāmi, gāgghasi, gagghati etc. ghāmmi, ghāmmeyya, gagghē, gaggheyya, etc.* The bases *dakkha, daccha* from √*dās, dis* are formed on the false analogy of the Future base, which we shall see when treating of the Future.

Most of the changes noticed above correspond to similar changes which occur in the 1st, 4th and 6th Conjugations of Sanskrit Verbs.

407. The desinences of the Aorist are:

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Reflective.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. am, m̐, im̐, a, ā	imha, imhā.	a	imhe
2. i, o, ā	ittha	ise	ivham̐
3. ā, i, ī	um̐, im̐su, ū	ā, a	tthum̐, atthum̐

*Remarks.* (a) The student will remark, on comparing the above Endings with those of the Imperfect, that it is difficult to make out the Imperfect from the Aorist (the blending of Imperfect and Aorist is well known to students of Comparative Philology): the only criterion is, that the Imperfect is generally formed on the Special Base, and the Aorist, on the root. But even this is not an absolute criterion, and the fact remains that these two tenses can scarcely be differentiated.

(b) Of the above Endings, however, the most commonly used and most distinctively Aoristic are:

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. im̐	imha, imhā
2. i	ittha
3. i	im̐su (isum̐)

(c) The nasal of *am̐* is often omitted, and *a* alone remains.

(d) The Aorist of the great majority of verbs is formed with the desinences given in (b).

408. The Aorist may be divided into *three types*:

- (i) Radical Aorist.
- (ii) Stem or Base Aorist.
- (iii) Sigmatic Aorist.



*Remarks.* (a) As its name indicates, the Radical Aorist is formed directly from the root.

(b) The Stem Aorist is formed on the Special Base.

(c) The Sigmatic Aorist is distinguished by an *s* that comes between the root and the personal endings given in (407), (b).

#### (i) THE RADICAL AORIST.

409. This Aorist is not very common. We will give a few examples. Let it be first remarked that the Aorist may also take the augment *a* before it, as does the Imperfect.

410. from √gam, and √gā and gū (*subsidiary forms of √gam,*) to go, we have :

##### (a) *Sing.*

1. agam, agamā

agamih

2. agā, agamā

3. agā, agami

##### *Plur.*

agumba

aguttha

agurh

agamihsu

##### (b) √as, to be (with augment *a*)—

##### *Sing.*

1. asih

2. āsi

3. āsi

##### *Plur.*

āsīmha

āsittha

āsum, āsihsu

#### 411. √Thā

##### *Sing.*

1. attham

2. attho

3. attha

##### *Plur.*

atthamha

atthattha

atthamsu

atthum

*Remarks.* For the doubling of initial *ṭh* see 33.

412. From *√kar* we find: *akam* (1st singular), no doubt formed on the analogy of:

*akā* (1st, 2nd and 3rd singular): *akā* being itself from the Vedic form: *akar*, the loss of the *r* is compensated by the lengthening of the final *a*.

In the 1st singular we also have: *akaram*, *akarim*. In the plural:

2. *akattha*; 3. *akarum*, *akarū*, *akarimsu*

413. *√hū* (a form of *√bhū*) to be.

3rd singular: *ahū*, *ahu*, and before a vowel, *ahud*.

1st plural: *ahumhā*; 3rd plural: *ahum*.

414. *√dā*

1st singular: *adā*, which is also 2nd and 3rd singular; in the plural we find: 3rd *adum*, *adamsu*, *adāsum*.

415. The augment *a* is not inseparable from the Aorist, so that we meet with such forms as *gā = agā*, etc.

## (ii) STEM AORIST.

416. As has already been said, this Aorist is formed on the stem or base, not on the root. The augment may or may not be retained.

*√pā*, base: *piva*, to drink.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. <i>pivim</i>	<i>pivimha</i>
2. <i>pivi</i>	<i>pivittha</i>
3. <i>pivi</i>	<i>pivimsu</i>

For the Reflective :

1. pive	pivimhe
2. pivise	pivivham
3. piva, pivā	pivu, pivum pivimsu, pivisum

417. The great bulk of Primitive Verbs (369) form their Aorist according to the above (*piva*) : it is therefore extremely common, both with and without the augment ; let it be stated once for all that this augment is of much more frequent occurrence in prose than in poetry ; in the latter its retention or its rejection is regulated by metrical exigencies. We will give a few more examples :

√ **bhuj** to eat, base : bhuñja ; √ **gam**, to go, base : gaccha.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. bhuñjim	bhuñjimha buñjimhā	gacchim	gacchimha gacchimhā
2. bhuñji	bhuñjittha	gacchi	gacchittha
3. bhuñji	bhuñjimsu	gacchi gañchi	gacchimsu

(iii) SIGMATIC AORIST.

418. Sigmatic Aorist is formed by inserting an *s* between the radical vowel or the vowel of the base and the personal endings given above (407, *b*.)

419. So that we obtain the following desinences :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. sim (=s+im)	simha (=s+imha)
2. si (=s+i)	sittha (=s+ittha)
3. si (=s+i)	sum (=s+um)

420. As will be readily understood, this formation of the Aorist is used with roots ending in vowels, and the *s* is inserted to join the endings to the root or to the base. It will be seen lower down, however, that they are added also to some roots ending in a consonant, when the *s* becomes assimilated to that consonant.

421. The *šigmatic desinences* are used mostly with the *Derivative Verbs*, principally the *Causative Verbs* (See *Derivative Conjugation*), which end in the vowel *e*. The verbs of the 7th Conjugation, which also end in *e*, form their Aorist in the same way.

## EXAMPLES.

*(Causative Verbs.)*

422. √**hā**, to abandon, Causative base: *hāpe*.

√**tas**, to tremble, Causative base: *tāse*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. <i>hāpesim</i>	<i>hāpesimha</i>	<i>tāsesim</i>	<i>tāsesimha</i>
2. <i>hāpesi</i>	<i>hāpesittha</i>	<i>tāsesi</i>	<i>tāsesittha</i>
3. <i>hāpesi</i>	<i>hāpesum</i>	<i>tāsesi</i>	* <i>tāsesum</i>

*Remarks.* In the 3rd plural the form in *im̐su* is also frequent: *hāpesim̐su*, *tasesim̐su*.

*(Verbs of the 7th Conjugation.)*

423. √**cur**, to steal, base: *core*; √**kath**, to tell, base: *kathe*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. <i>coresim̐</i>	<i>coresimha</i>	<i>kathesim̐</i>	<i>kathesimha</i>
2. <i>coresi</i>	<i>coresittha</i>	<i>kathesi</i>	<i>katesittha</i>
3. <i>coresi</i>	<i>coresum</i>	<i>kathesi</i>	<i>kathesum</i>
	<i>caresim̐su</i>		<i>kathesim̐su</i>

*Remarks.* (a) To the base in *aya* endings given in (407, b) may be added directly without the insertion of sigmatic *s*, so that we have also :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	corayim̐	corayimha	kathayim̐	kathayimha
2.	corayi	corayittha	kathayi	kathayittha
3.	corayi	corayum̐	kathayi	kathayum̐
		corayimsu		kāthayimsu

(b) This holds good for the Causative Verbs, which have also a base in *aya*.

424. The Sigmatic Aorist desinences are placed after some roots which do not belong to the 7th Conjugation or to the Derivative Verbs :

(i) After roots ending in a vowel, with or without the augment *a*.

(ii) After some roots ending in a consonant, in which case the usual rules of assimilation (85) are strictly applied.

#### EXAMPLES OF (i).

√*dā*, to give : *adāsim̐*, *adāsi*, *adāsimhā*, etc.

√*tha*, to stand : *aṭṭhāsim̐*, *aṭṭhāsimha*, etc.

√*hā*, to abandon : *ahāsim̐*, *ahāsi*, *ahāsimha*, etc.

√*su* to hear, *assosim̐*, *assosi*, *assosimha*, etc.

√*yā*, to go : *yāsim̐*, *yāsi*, *yāsimha*, etc.

*Remarks.* From an illusory √*kā* (= *kar*, to do), we find : *akāsim̐*, *akāsi*, *akāsimha*, etc.

From √*ñā*, to know : *aññāsim̐*, *aññāsi*, *aññāsimha*, etc.

## EXAMPLES OF (ii).

425. At a first reading, the student had perhaps better leave unnoticed the few references to Sanskrit Grammar which will be found in the next few paragraphs. Let him merely assume the forms as they are given: the more advanced student ought, of course, to read them with attention. The chapter on Comparative Phonology will greatly help him in understanding the various changes in the root, which we will now bring to his notice.

426. The *s* (initial) of Sigmatic desinences, as above given (419), assimilates itself to the last consonant of the root according to the usual rules of assimilation.

(a) Form √**dis**=Sanskrit √*dr̥ṣ*, we find *addāhki*=Sanskrit *adrak-ṣ-is*.

The following forms are also found: *addakkhī*, *adakkhi*, *dakkhi*.

(b) From √**sak**, to be able=Sanskrit √*śak*, we have *sakkhi*, *asakkhi*; Sanskrit=*śak-ṣ-is*.

(c) √**kus**, to revile=Sanskrit √*kruṣ*, gives *akkocchi*, but *akkosi*, without the Sigmatic *s*, is also met with.

(d) √**bhañj**, to break, gives Aorisi *bhañkhi*.

*Remark.* The above examples will, I think, be sufficient to make the student understand the nature of changes which occur in the formation of the Sigmatic Aorist when the roots end in a consonant; this consonant is generally *s* (=Sanskrit *ṣ*) and sometimes *j*. In Sanskrit, final *ṣ* (=Pāli *s*) is regularly changed to *k* before the initial *s* of verbal endings thus giving the group *kṣa*, which in Pāli becomes *kkha*. Again, by

another rule of Sanskrit phonetics, final *j* becomes *g*, and as no word can end in a mute sonant, this *g* is changed to its corresponding surd, that is, to *k*.

This class of the Sigmatic Aorist, however, is not numerous.

#### SYSTEM OF THE PERFECT.

427. As has been seen, the Perfect System consists of the Perfect tense and the Perfect Participle. The participle will be treated of in the chapter on Participles.

428. The Perfect is characterized by the *reduplication* of the root. The rules have already been given (372) and should now be read over carefully.

429. The endings are :

		<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>Active</i>		<i>Reflective</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. a	mha	i	mhe
2. e	ttha	ttho	vho
3. a	u	ttha	re

*Remarks.* (a) Roots ending in a consonant insert an *i* before the above endings *beginning with a consonant*.

(b) The Perfect is of very rare occurrence.

430. √**pac**, Perfect base : papac. √**bhū**, Perfect base : babhūv.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Active.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. papaca	papacimha	babhūva	babbūvimha
2. papace	papacittha	babhūve	babhūvittha
3. papaca	papacu	babhūva	babhūvu

<i>Reflective.</i>		<i>Reflective.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. papaci	papacimhe.	babhūvi	babhūvimhe.
2. papacit- tho.	papacivho.	babhūvit- tho.	babhūvivho
3. papacit- tha.	papacire.	babhūvit- tha.	babhūvire.

## THE FUTURE SYSTEM.

431. This system includes the Future, the Conditional and the Future Participle. The Participle will be considered in a special chapter.

432. The Future System has for special characteristic the sign : *ssa* inserted between the root and the personal endings.

*Remarks.* (a) The Future System is frequently formed on the Present base.

(b) The vowel *i* is often inserted between the *ssa* and the root or base : in this case the final vowel of the root or base is dropped.

(c) When the *ssa* is added directly to a root ending in a consonant, the same changes which occur in the Aorist occur also in the Future System, through the assimilation of the initial *s* of *ssa*.

433. The Personal Endings for the Future are :

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Reflective.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. mi	ma	m	mhe
2. si	tha	se	vhe
3. ti	nṭi	te	nṭe, re



*Remarks.* (a) It will be seen that in the Active the endings are the same as those of the Present Indicative (381).

(b) Before *mi*, *ma* and *mhe* the *a* of *ssa* is lengthened.

### EXAMPLES.

434. (i) without connecting vowel *i*.

(a) *√i*, to go, special base *e* (390), future base : *essa*.

Active		Reflective.	
Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plur.
1. <i>essāmi</i>	<i>essāma</i>	<i>essam</i>	<i>essāmhe</i>
2. <i>essasi</i>	<i>essatha</i>	<i>essase</i>	<i>essavhe</i>
3. <i>essati</i>	<i>essanti</i>	<i>essate</i>	<i>essante</i>

*√ñi* to lead, special base *ne* (371,3) future base : *nessa*.

Singular : *nessāmi*, *nessasi*, *nessati*; Plural *nessāma*, *nessatha*, *nessanti*, etc.

(b) *√ihā*, to stand, Singular : *thassāmi*, *thassasi*, *thassati*; Plural : *thassāma*, *thassatha*, *thassanti*, etc.

*Remarks.* In the above *ssa* is added directly to the root; for the shortening of radical *a* see (34). Again :

*√dā*, to give, Singular : *dassāmi*, *dassasi*, *dassati*; Plural : *dassāma*, *dassatha*, *dassanti*.

(ii) with connecting vowel *i*.

(c) *bhū*, to be, special base : *bhava*, future base : *bhavissa*.

## Active.

## Reflective.

## Sing.

## Plur.

## Sing.

## Plur.

1. bhavissāmi bhavissāma bhavissāṃ bhavissāṃhe
2. bhavissasi bhavissatha bhavissase bhavissavhe
3. bhavissati bhavissanti bhavissate bhavissante

(ii) with assimilation of **ssa**.

(d) √ **bhuj**, to eat, gives bhokkha as future base (=Sanskrit √bhuj=bhok+ṣya=bhokṣya) and we have: *bhokkhati, bhokkate, bhokkham*, etc.

√ **chid**, to cut, gives: *checcha* (Sanskrit √chid=chet+ṣya=chetṣya) then: *checchāmi, checcasi, checcati*, etc.

√ **dis**, to see, gives a future: *dakkha* (=Sanskrit √dr̥ṣ=drak+ṣya=drakṣya): from this we find: *dakkhati*, but more frequently *dakkhiti*. Similarly, from root √sak, to be able, is obtained *sakkhiti*.

435. A double future is also found formed from bases like *bhokkha, dhakka*, which, as has been just now explained, are already future, by adding to them *ssa* with the connection vowel—*i*.

## EXAMPLES.

√ **sak**, future base: *sakka, sakkhissāmi, sakkhissasi, sakkhissati, sakkhissāma*, etc.

436. From *hoti*, the contracted form of *bhavati*, to be, we find the following numerous forms for the future:

## Singular.

1. *hemi, hehāmi, hohāmi, hessāmi, hehissāmi, bohissāmi, I shall be.*
2. *hesi, hehiṣi, hohisi, hessasi, hehissasi, hohissasi, Thou will be.*
3. *heti, hehiti, hohiti, hessati, hehissati, hohissati, He will be.*

*Plural.*

1. hema, hehāma, hohāma, hessāma, hehissāma, hohissāma, *We shall be.*
2. hehta, hehitha, hohitha, hessatha, hehissatha, hohissatha, *You will be.*
3. henti, hehinti, hohinti, hessantha, hehissanti, hohissanti, *They will be.*

√ **kar**, to do, gives :

*Sing.**Plur.*

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. kāhāmi, I shall do            | kāhāma, we shall do            |
| 2. kāhasi, kāhisi, thou wilt do. | kāhatha, you will do           |
| 3. kāhati, kāhiti, he will do    | kāhanti, kāhinti, they will do |

## THE CONDITIONAL.

437. The Condition takes the augment *a* before the root.

438. The personal endings are as follows :

*Active.**Reflective.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. ssa	ssamhā	ssañ	ssāmhase.
2. sse, ssa, ssasi	ssatha	ssase,	ssavhe.
3. ssā, ssa, ssati	ssaṃsu	ssatha	ssimsu.

*Remarks.* The above endings are generally joined to the root or the base by means of the connecting vowel *i*.

√**pāc**, to cook :

*Active.*

*Reflective.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

- |              |              |             |               |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. apacissam | apacissamhā  | apacissam   | apacissāmhase |
| 2. apacisse  | apaccissatha | apacissase  | apacissavhe   |
| apacissa     |              |             |               |
| apacissi     |              |             |               |
| 3. apacissā  | apacissamsu  | apacissatha | apacissimsu   |
| apacissa     |              |             |               |
| apacissati   |              |             |               |

*Remarks.* (a) The Conditional may be translated by "If I could cook," "If I should cook," etc.

(b) The conditional is not very frequently used.

#### THE PARTICIPLES.

(a). *Present Participle.*

**ACTIVE.**

439. All participles are of the nature of verbal adjectives, and must agree with their nouns, in number, gender and case.

440. The terminations of the *present participle active* are : **nta**, **am**, or **m**; nta and m are added to the *base* am is added to the *root*.

#### EXAMPLES.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Base.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Part.</i>	<i>Act. (base)</i>
√pāc, to cook,	paca	pacām,	pacanta	cooking
√kar, to do,	kara	karam	karanta	doing
√chid, to cut	chinda,	chindam	chindanta	cutting
√bhaṇ, to say,	bhaṇa,	bhaṇam	bhaṇanta	saying
√bhū, to be,	bhava	bhavam	bhavanta,	being
√pā, to drink,	piva,	pivam	pivanta	drinking

441. Verbal bases ending in *e* (1st Conj. 3rd. Division; 7th. Conj. and causal bases\*) which have also another base in *aya*, take only the termination **nta** after the base in *e*, and both **nta** and **m̐** after the base in *aya*.

## EXAMPLES.

(1st and 7th Conjugations)

Root.	Base.	Pres. Par. Act. (base)
√cur, to steal	core, coraya	corenta, corayaṁ, corayanta
√kath, to tell	kathe, kat h-aya	kathenta, kathayaṁ, kathayanta
√nī, to lead,	ne, naya	nenta, nayaṁ, nayanta
√ji, to conquer	je, jaya	jenta, jayaṁ, jayanta

(Causative.)

Root.	Caus. Base.	Pres. Part, Act. Base
dhar, to hold	dhāre, dhāraya.	dhārenta, dhārayaṁ, dhārayanta
	dhārāpe, dhārāpaya,	dhārāpenta, dhārāpayaṁ, dhārāpayanta.
mar, to die,	māre, māraya,	mārenta, mārayaṁ, mārayanta.
	mārāpe, mārāpaya,	mārāpenta, mārāpayaṁ, mārāpayanta
chid, to cut,	chede, chedaya	chedenta, chedayaṁ, chedayanta.
	chedāpe, chedāpaya	chedāpenta, chedāpayaṁ, chedāpayanta.

\* See Derivation or Secondary Conjugation.

442. Bases in *ṇā*, *ṇo*, *uṇā*, *uṇo* (4th Conj.) and *nā* (5th Conj.) generally take the termination **nta**.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Base.</i>	<i>Pres. Part. Act. (Base).</i>
su, to hear,	suṇā, suṇo,	suṇanta, suṇonta
kī, to buy,	kiṇā,	kiṇanta

443. The stem or base of this Present Participle is in *at* or *ant* as :

*Pres. Part.*

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Nom. Sing. Masc.</i>
√pac,	pacat, pacant	pacam, pacanto
√car,	carat, carant	caram, caranto
√bhaṇ,	bhaṇat, bhaṇant	bhaṇam, bhaṇanto

444. The Feminine is formed by adding *ī* to the stems or bases in **at** and **nta**.

445. The Neuter is in *m* like the masculine.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
√pac	pacat pacant	{ pacam pacanto	pacatī pacantī	pacam pacantam
√chid	chindat chindant	{ chindam chindanto	chindatī chindantī	chindam chindantam

446. These participles are declined like *mahā* (226) in the Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

The Present Participle may often be translated by "when....., while".....etc.

*Reflective Participle.*

447. The Reflective Participle is formed by the addition of **māna** to the base. It is declined like *purisa*, *kaññā*, and *rūpaṃ*.

EXAMPLES.

*Reflective Participle.*

Root.	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.
√pac	pacamāno	pacamānā	pacamānaṃ
√car	caramāno	caramānā	caramānaṃ
√dā	dadamāno	dadamānā	dadamānaṃ
√su	suṇamāno	suṇamānā	suṇamānaṃ

448. Another Reflective Participle, much less frequent than the above, is formed by adding **āna** to the root. It is declined like that in *māna*.

EXAMPLES.

*Reflective Participle.*

Root.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
√pac	pacāno	pacānā	pacānaṃ
√car	carāno	carānā	carānaṃ
√dā	dadāno	dadānā	dadānaṃ

*Remarks.* As may be seen from the last example, *dadāna*, this participle may also be formed from the base.

*The Future Participle.*

449. The future participle is either active or reflective.

(a) In the active, it takes the endings of the present: participle active, *nta*, *m* (or *am*), and is declined like *mahā*.

(b) In the reflective, the endings are: *māna* and *āna*, and it is declined like *purisa*, *kaññā* and *rūpaṃ*.

(c) All these endings are added to the future base.

## EXAMPLES.

(i) *Future Participle Active.*

Roots.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
√pac	pacissam	pacissatī	pacissam
	pacissanto	pacissantī	pacissantam
√car	carissam	carissatī	carissam
	carissanto	carissantī	carissantam
√su	suṇissam	suṇissatī	suṇissam
	suṇissanto	suṇissanti	suṇissantam

(ii) *Future Participle Reflective.*

√pac	pacissamāno	pacissamānā	pacissamānam
	pacissāno	pacissānā	pacissānam
√car	carissamāno	carissamānā	carissamānam
	carissāno	carissānā	carissānam
√su	suṇissamāno	suṇissamānā	suṇissamānam
	suṇissāno	suṇissānā	suṇissānam



*The Passive Perfect Participle.*

450. This participle is very widely used. It is formed from the root by affixing to it the suffix **ta** or the suffix **na**.

*Remarks.* The suffix *ta* is by far the most commonly used in the formation of this participle.

451. **ta** is affixed in several ways:

- (i) If the root end in a vowel, it is added directly without any change taking place in the root.
- (ii) When the root ends in a consonant, *ta* may be joined to it by means of connecting vowel *i*.
- (iii) When the root ends in a consonant, *ta* may become assimilated to it according to the usual rules.

*Remarks.* At this stage, the student ought to read carefully the chapter on Assimilation (p. 22 ff.)

## EXAMPLES.

452. Roots ending in a vowel.

Root.	Present.	Pass. Perf. Part.
√nahā, to bathe	nahāyati, he bathes	nahāta, bathed
√bhū, to be, become	bhavati, he is, becomes	bhūta, been, becāme
√nī, to lead	neti, nayati, he leads	nīta, led
√jī, to conquer	jēti, jayati, he conquers	jīta, conquered
√ci, to collect	cināti, he collects	cita, collected
√bhī to be afraid.	bhāyati, he is afraid	bhīta, afraid, frightened
√yā, to go, undergo	yāti, he goes	yāta, gone, undergone
√ñā, to know	jānāti, he knows	ñāta, known

*Remarks.* There are a few exceptions to roots in final *ā*.

√**pā**, to drink, makes **pita**, drunk.

√**thā**, to stand, makes **thita**, stood, standing.

√**dhā**, to hold, becomes **hita**, held.

√**dā**, to give, **dinna**, given.

(ii) Roots ending in a consonant and taking vowel *i* before *ta*.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Pass. Perf. Part.</i>
pac, to cook	pacati, he cooks	pacita, cooked
cal, to shake	calati, he shakes	calita, shaken
gah, to take	gaṇhāti, he takes	gahita, taken
kapp, to arrange	kappeti, he arranges	kappita, arranged
khād, to eat	khādati, he eats	khādita, eaten
likh, to write	likhati, he writes	likhita, written
maṇḍ, to adorn	maṇḍeti, he adorns	maṇḍita, adorned
gil, to swallow	gilati, he swallows	gilita, swallowed
kath, to tell	katheti, he tells	kathita, told

*Remarks.* (a) Participles like *pacita*, *calita*, etc., are declined like *purisa*, *kaññā* and *rūpaṃ*.

(b) In the *neuter*, these participles are often used as nouns :

√**has**, to smile, Passive Perfect Participle : *hasita*, smiled ; *neuter* : *hasitaṃ*, a smile.

√**gajj**, to thunder, Passive Perfect Participle : *gajjitta*, thundered ; *neuter* : *gajjitaṃ*, the thunder.

√**jīv**, to live, Passive Perfect Participle : *jivita*, lived ; *neuter* : *jivitaṃ*, life.

(iii) *ta* assimilated to the root.

453. The suffix *ta* assimilates, or is assimilated to, the last consonant of the root :

<i>Root.</i>	<i>P. P. P. rules of assimilation.</i>	
√bhu <sub>j</sub> , to eat	bhutta, eaten	(59, a)
√muc, to free	mutta, freed	(59, b)
√is, to wish	it̐tha, wished	(59, ii, iii)
√kas, to plough	kaṭṭha, ploughed	(92)
√das, to bite	daṭṭha, bitten	(92)
√dam, to tame	danta, tamed	(67)
√kam, to proceed	kanta, proceeded,	(67)
	gone	
√rudh, to obstruct	ruddha, obstructed	(63)
√budh, to know	buddha, known	(63)
√labh, to obtain	laddha, obtained	(63, Remark
√majj, to polish	maṭṭha (also :	(59 i)
	maṭṭa), polished	
√muh, to err	mūḷha, erred (also:	(100, 101, 102)
	muddha,)	
√ruh, to ascend	rūḷha, ascended	(100, 101, 102)
√lih, to lick	liḷha, licked	(100, 101, 102)
√jhas, to hurt	jhatta, hurt	(94)
√pat, to fall	patta, fallen	(62)
√tap, to burn	tatta, burned	(64, i)
√duh, to milk	duddha, milked	(100)

454. (a) Roots in *r* generally drop the *r* before *ta*

#### EXAMPLES.

√kar, to make	kata, made	(81)
√sar, to remember	sata, remembered	(81)
√mar, to die	mata, dead	(81)

455. (b) Roots in *n* generally drop final *n* before *ta*.

## EXAMPLES.

√man, to think	mata, thought
√khan or khaṇ, to dig	khata (also : khāta, from a collateral form khā = khan), dug
√han, to kill	hata, killed

456. (c) sometimes final *m* is also dropped.

## EXAMPLES.

√gam, to go	gata, gone
√ram, to sport	rata, amused, delighted

457. (d) In a few cases, final *r* lingualizes the following *t*, as :

√har, to seize, carry	haṭa, seized, carried
-----------------------	-----------------------

458. Pass. Perf. Part. which takes *na*.

The suffix *na* is much less common than *ta*, and like it :

- (i) it may be joined to the root by means of connecting vowel *i*, or
- (ii) it may be joined directly to roots ending in a vowel ;
- (iii) when added directly to roots ending in a consonant, that consonant is assimilated to *n* of *na*, and sometimes the *n* of *na* is assimilated to the final consonant.

Remarks. *na* is added generally to roots in *d* and *r*.

459. EXAMPLES OF (i)

Root.	Pass. P. P.	Rules of assimilation.
√ sad, to settle	sinna, settled	(69, ii, iii).

*Remarks.* The form *sinna* is found only for the verb *nisīdati*, to sit down, = √*sad* + *ni* (prefix); when √*sad* is preceded by other prefixes, the Passive Perfect Participle assumes form; *sanna*, as

*sad*—*ava* = Passive Perfect Participle: *ava sanna*, sunk, settled.

*sad* + *pa* = Passive Perfect Participle: *pasanna*, settled.

(Note that the base of root *sad* is *sīda*.)

√ <i>chid</i> , to cut	<i>chinna</i> , cut	(69, ii, iii)
√ <i>chad</i> , to cover	<i>channa</i> , covered	(69, ii, iii)
√ <i>dā</i> , to give	<i>dinna</i> , given	(69, ii, iii)

In this last example, *ā* of the root has been dropped and the *n* doubled to compensate for its loss; the form *datta*, given (= *dā* + *ta*, with the *t* doubled to make for the shortening of *ā*), is found sometimes.

*Remarks.* It will be seen from the above four examples that the insertion of *i* is to a great extent optional.

√ <i>tar</i> , to cross	<i>tiṇṇa</i> , crossed	(83)
√ <i>car</i> , to wander	<i>ciṇṇa</i> , wandered	(83)
√ <i>kir</i> , to scatter	<i>kiṇṇa</i> , scattered	(83)

*Remarks.* In these examples, *i* is inserted and then *n* reduplicated and lingualized according to rule (83)

460.

## EXAMPLES OF (iii)

Root.	P. P. P.	Rules of assimilation.
√ <i>bhaj</i> , to break	<i>bhagga</i> , broken	(57)
√ <i>vij</i> , to be agitated	<i>vigga</i> , agitated	(57)

In these two examples, final *j* of the root having become, against the usual phonetic laws, *g*, the *n* of suffix *na*, is assimilated to it by rule 57. (426, *Remark*).

√lag, to adhere      lagga, adhered      (57)

#### 461.      EXAMPLES OF (ii)

√lī, to cling to	līna, clung to
√lū, to cut, reap	lūna, reaped, cut
√khi, to decay, cease	khīna, decayed (final <i>i</i> is lengthened)
√gilā, (glā, 113), to be ill	gilāna, ill
√hā, to be weak, low	hīna, low, wasted, inferior

In the last example, radical *ā* is replaced by *ī*.

462. A few Passive Perfect Participles are irregular, such as: *jhāma*, burnt, from √jhā, to burn; *phulla*, expanded, split, from √phal, to expand, split; but these are properly speaking derivative adjectives used as participles.

463. Sometimes two forms of the Passive Perfect Participles for the same root are met with :

√lag, to adhere	P. P. P. lagga and lagita
√gam, to go	P. P. P. gata and gamita
√dā, to give	P. P. P. dinna and datta
√kas, to plough	P. P. P. katṭha and kasita

464. The participles in *ta* and *na* are declined like *purisa*, *kaññā* and *rūpam*.

#### PERFECT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE.

465. The Perfect Participle *Active*, is formed by adding *vā* to the Passive Perfect Participle.

## EXAMPLES.

Root.	P. P. P.	P. P. A.
√pac, to cook	pacita, cooked	pacitavā, having cooked.
√bhuj, to eat	bhutta, eaten	bhuttavā, having eaten.
√kar, to do	kata, made	katavā, having made.

*Remarks.* (a) These Perfect Participles Active are declined like *guṇavā*, *ex.*, *pacitavā*, *pacitavatī* or *pacitavantī*, *pacitavam* or *pacitavantam*.

(b) The P. P. Active is also formed with suffix *vī* (231), in this case the *a* before *vī* is lengthened to *ā*. They are declined like *medhāvī*, 235 (that is, like *daṇḍī*, *nadī* and *vārī*) as: *pacitāvī*, having cooked; *bhuttāvī*, having eaten.

## FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

466. This participle, also called *participle of necessity*, *potential participle* and *gerundive*, is formed (by adding to the root the suffixes: *tabba*, *ya*, *anīya* and *īy*,

*Remarks.* (a) Roots ending in *u* *ū*, generally form the F. P. P. from special base.

(b) This participle is passive in sense, expresses *suitability*, *fitness*, *propriety* and may be translated by: "*fit to be....*" "*must be....*" "*ought to be....*" that which is expressed by the root.

(c) These participles, like those already treated of, are adjectives and are treated as such; they are declined like *purisa*, *kaññā* and *rūpaṃ*.

## TABBA.

467. This suffix is the most common. It is added:

(i) directly to roots ending in a vowel;

- (ii) to roots ending in a consonant, it may be joined by means of connecting vowel *i* :  
 (iii) when added directly—without connecting vowel *i*—to roots ending in a consonant initial *t* of *tabba* is assimilated to or assimilates the last consonant of the root in exactly the same manner as in the formation of the Passive Perfect Participle.

## EXAMPLES OF (i)

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Fut. P. P.</i>
√hā, to abandon	hātabba, fit to be, that ought to be, that must be abandoned.
√dā, to give	dātabba, fit to be, that ought to be, that must be given.
√pā, to drink	pātabba, fit to be, that ought to be drunk.

*Remarks.* (a) Roots ending in *i*, *ī*, change *i*, *ī* to *e* before *tabba* :

√nī, to lead,	netabba, fit to be, that must be led
√ji to conquer,	jetabba, fit to be, that must be conquered.
√i, to go,	etabba, fit to be, that must be gone to.

(ii) Roots in *u*, *ū* form the Fut. P. P. on the *Special Base* :

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Fut. P. P.</i>
√bhū, to be,	bhavitabba, fit to be, that ought to, that must be.
√ku, to sing,	kavitabba, fit to be, that ought to be, that must be sung.

In the case of root *su*, to hear, we find the *u* merely strengthened : *sotabba*, fit, *etc.*, to be heard.



## EXAMPLES OF (ii)

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Fut, Press Part.</i>
√pac, to cook	pacitabba, fit to be, that ought to be, that must be cooked
√khan, to dig	khanitabba, fit to be, that ought to be, that must be dug
√pucch, to ask	pucchitabba, fit to be, that ought to be, that must be asked.

## EXAMPLES. OF (iii).

√gam, to go	gantabba, fit, <i>etc.</i> , to be gone to (67).
√kar, to do	kattabba, (80); kātabba (82), fit <i>etc.</i> , to be done.
√labh, to receive	laddhabba, fit, <i>etc.</i> , to be received (63, <i>Remark</i> ).

## YA.

468. The initial *y* becomes assimilated to the last consonant of the root according to the usual rules of assimilation (79ff). Sometimes the radical vowel is strengthened.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Fut. P. P.</i>	<i>Rules of Assimilation.</i>
√gam, to go	gamma, fit, proper, <i>etc.</i> , to be gone to	(71, i)
√sak, to be able	sakka, able to be done	(71)
√khād, to eat, chew	khajja, that can be chewed.	(71, vi)
√vaj, to avoid	vajja, that ought to be avoided.	(71, 74)

√bhū, to be                      bhabba, that ought to  
be = proper, possible (77)

In this last example, the radical vowel *ū* has been strengthened before *ya*: bhū + ya = bhav + ya = bhavya = bhabba.

√labh, to obtain              labbha, fit, worthy to  
be obtained                      (71)

√bhuj, to eat                  bhojja, to be eaten =  
eatables, food                      (71)

√bhid, to break              bhijja, to be broken (71, vi)

√lih, to lick, sip              leyya, to be licked,  
sipped                              (98, *Remark*)

√has, to laugh              hassa, fit to be  
laughed at                          (76)

√gah, to take                  gayha, that can be  
taken, seized                      (78, 111)

(a) *ya* is, in a few cases, joined to the root by means of vowel *i*. For instance:

√kar, to do, make, we have, kāriya, that ought to be, or can be done, with lengthening of radical *a*.

kayya, that ought, *etc.*, to be done, with assimilation of final *r* to *ya*.

kayīra, that ought, *etc.*, with metathesis. (111.)

√bhar, to support, bhāriya, that ought to be maintained, with lengthening of radical *a*.

(c) After roots ending in *ā* long, initial *y* of *ya* is doubled and final *a* of the root is changed to *e*.

#### EXAMPLES.

√hā, to abandon              heyya, to be abandoned, that  
ought to be abandoned.

√pā, to drink                  peyya, that can, may, or ought  
to be drunk.

dā, to give

deyya, to be given, that ought  
to or can be given.

(c) *ya* is likewise doubled after roots *i*, *ī* and the *i* or *ī* is changed to *e*.

## EXAMPLES.

√nī, to lead

neyya, to be led, that ought to  
be led.

√ji, to conquer

jeyya, to be conquered, that can  
be conquered.

## ANĪYA.

469. The suffix *anīya* is added to the root or to the base.

## EXAMPLES.

Root.

Fut. Past. Part.

√pac, to cook

pacanīya, fit to be cooked

√pūj, to honour

pūjanīya, worthy to be honour-  
ed.

√kar, to do, make

karaṇīya, that ought to be made  
or done.

(Observe that the *n* is lingualized through the influence of radical *r*, 83).

√bhū, to be (base: *bhava*) bhavanīya, that ought to be.

## The Gerund.

470. The gerund is formed by means of suffixes: *tvā*, *tvāna*, *tūna*, *ya*, and *tya*. It is indeclinable and partakes of the nature of a participle.

Remarks. (a) The suffix *tvā* is most commonly met with; *tvāna*, *tūna*, and sometimes *tūnaṁ* are used as substitutes of *tvā* and are met with in poetry much more than in prose.

(b) *ya* is not so restricted in use as *tvāna* and *tūna*.

(c) *tya* which becomes regularly *cca* (74, iv), is merely a form of *ya*, initial *t* being inserted between the gerundial suffix *ya* and a root ending in a vowel (ex., *pa*, + *√i*, to depart + *ya* = *pa* + *i* + *t* + *ya* = *petya* = *pecca*, having departed. (110).

In Pāli *ya* is added indiscriminately to simple roots or to roots compounded with prefixes : but as in Sanskrit (in which it is never used after roots) it is much more common after compound verbs.

### TVĀ, TVĀNA, TUNA.

471. The suffix *tvā* may be :

- (i) joined to the root by means of connecting vowel *i* ;
- (ii) the initial *t* of the suffix is, in a few cases, assimilated to the last consonant of the root ;
- (iii) the vowel of the root is gunated ;
- (iv) Sometimes the last consonant of the root is dropped before suffixes *tvā*, *tvāna* and *tūna* ;
- (v) the final long vowel of a root is shortened before these suffixes ;
- (vi) the suffixes are added to the special base as well as to the root.

### EXAMPLES.

Root.	Gerund.
√ <i>pac</i> , to cook	<i>pacitvā</i> , having cooked (i)
√ <i>khād</i> , to eat	<i>khāditvā</i> , having eaten (i)

*Root.**Gerund.*

√labh, to obtain	laddhā, obtained (ii), (63), <i>Remark</i> ) labhivā, having obtained (i)
√ni, to lead	netvā, having led (iii)
√chid, to cut	chetvā, having cut (iii, iv)
√kar, to make	katvā, having made (iv)
√thā, to stand, remain	thitvā, having stood, remained (i)
√bhī, to fear	bhityā, having feared, fearing (v)
√dā, to give	datvā, having given (v)
√bhuj, to eat	bhutvā, having eaten (iv)
√āp—pa=pāp, to get	patvā, having got (iv, v)
√ji, to conquer	jitvā, jetvā, having conquered (iii)

*Remarks.* From root thā, we have also: thatvā; from √dā, daditvā, daditvāna; from √kar: kātūna, katūna; from √kam, to step, to proceed: nikkamitvā, nikkamitūna; √su, to hear; sutvā, sotūnaṁ, suṇitvā, sunitvāna.

*YA, TYA.*

472. (i) *ya* is used mostly with roots compounded with prefixes.

(ii) in a few cases it is used with simple roots.

(iii) *tya* is regularly changed to *cca*.

(iv) *ya* is added directly to roots ending in long ā.

(v) *ya* may be added to the Special Base.

(vi) *ya* is assimilated to the last consonant of the root.

(vii) *ya* may be joined to the root or to the base by means of *i*.

## EXAMPLES.

√sic, to sprinkle	nisiñciya, having besprinkled (i, vii)
√jā, to know	vijāniya, having known, dis- cerned (i, v, vii)
√ikkh, to see	samekkhiya, having reflected (i, vii)
√cint, to think	cintiya, having thought (ii, vii)
√bhuj, to eat	bhuñjiya, having eaten (v, ii, vii)
√dā, to give	ādāya, having given (i, iv)
√hā, to abandon	vihāya, having abandoned (i, iv)
√ñā, to know	abhiññāya, having known (i, iv)
√gah, to take	gayha, having taken (ii, iii)
√gam, to go	gamma, having gone (vi, 71; ii)
√vis, to enter	pavissa, having entered (vi, i)
√sad, to sit down	nisajja, having sat (vi, 71, 74)
√sad, to sit down	nisīdiya, having sat (i, vii, v) (See 459. Remark)
√kam, to tread	akkamma, having trodden (vi, 71, 33, 35)
√i, to go	pecca, having gone, departed = pa + i + tya (21, i; 74, iv)
√i, to go	abhisamecca, having comprehended = abhi + sam + ā + i + tya (21, i)
√han, to strike	āhacca, having struck, = ā + han + tya, final n being dropped before initial t. (n, dropped before t)
√han, to strike	upahacca, having vexed, = upa + han + tya. (See last remark)
√han, to strike	uhacca, having destroyed, = u + han + tya. (See last remark)
√i, go	paṭicca, following upon, from, = paṭi + i + tya

√har, to take away, āhacca, having reached, attained,  
= ā + har + tya. (81)

This last should not be confounded with the gerund from √han, given above.

*Remarks.* (a) Sometimes the gerund having been formed by means of *ya*, the *ya* is dropped, the root alone remaining, as :

*abhiññā*, having known, = *abhiññāya*.

*paṭisaṅkhā*, having pondered, = *paṭisaṅkhāya*.

*anupādā*, not having clung, not clinging, = *anupādāya* (an + upa + ā + √dā + ya)

(b) Some roots seem to take a compound gerundial suffix, made up of *ya* and *tvā*, and joined to the root by means of *i*, as :

*ārūyhitvā* (√ruh), having ascended.

*ogayhitvā* (√gāh = gah), having dived, = *ogayhaogayhitvā*

(c) There are some anomalous forms :

*disvā*, from √dis, to see = having seen.

*daṭṭhu* = *disvā*.

*anuvicca*, from √vid, to know = having known; final *d* being dropped before *tya*.

*pappuyya* from √āp + pa = pāp, to obtain = *pāpayitvā*.

*vineyya*, from √ni, having removed.

*niccheyya*, from √nis = having ascertained.

In these last three examples the *y* has undergone reduplication.

*atisitvā*, from √sar = Sānskrit *sr.* (?), having approached, having excelled.

(d) The student will have remarked that several forms are met with from the same root, as :

√dā, datvā, daditvā, daditvāna, dāya.

√kar, kariya, karitvā, katvā, katvāna, kātūna, kattūna.

√gah, gayha, gaṇhiya, gaṇhitvā.

Most roots can thus have several forms.

### The Infinitive.

473. The Infinitive is generally formed by means of suffix *tum*.

474. The suffixes *tave*, *luye* and *lāye* are also met with, but seldom.

475. *Tum*, like the suffix of the P. P. P. (450, ff) may be :

- (i) joined to the root or to the base by vowel *i*;
- (ii) to the roots in *ā*, it is added directly;
- (iii) roots ending in *i*, *ī*, change final *i*, *ī* to *e*;  
and roots in *u*, *ū*, change *u*, *ū* to *o*;
- (iv) initial *t* of *tum* is assimilated to the last consonant of the root; the last consonant may also be assimilated to *t*;
- (v) *tum* is also added to the Spécial Base.

### EXAMPLES.

√pac, to cook	pacitum, to cook	(i)
√khād, to eat	khāditum, to eat	(i)
√thar, to spread	tharitum, to spread	(i)
dā, to give	dātum	(ii)
√tha, to stand	thātum	(ii)
√yā, to go	yātum	(ii)
√ji, to conquer	jetum	(iii)



√nī, to lead	netum (iii)
√su, to hear	sotum (iii)
√labh, to obtain	laddum, to obtain, (iv, 63, Remark)
√bhuj, to eat	bhottum, to eat (iii, iv, 59-a)
√āp, to obtain + pa	pattum, to obtain (iv, 64, i)
√gam, to go	gantum, to go (iv; 67)
√i, to go	etum, to go (iii)
√su, to hear	sunītum, to hear (v)
√budh, to know	bodhitum, to know (i, iii)
√budh, to know	bujjhitum, to know (i, v)
√sī, to lie down	setum, to lie down (iii)
√sī, to lie down	sayitum. (v)
√jā, to know	jānitum, to know (v)
√chid, to cut	chinditum, to cut (v)
√chid, to cut	chettum, to cut (iii, iv; 62—vi)

## TAVE, TUYE, TĀYE.

476. These suffixes are Vedic and but seldom used in Pāli; *tave*, however, is more frequently met with than the other two.

√nī, lead	nitave, to lead
√hā, to abandon	vippahātave, to abandon, = vi + pa + hā + tave
√nam, to bend	unnametave, to ascend, rise, = ud + nam + e + tave
√dhā, to hold	nidhetave, to hide, bury, = ni + base dhe (39r) + tave
√mar, to die	marituye, to die. Joined by vowel i
√gan, to count	ganetuye, to count. Added to the base gane
√dis, to see	dakkhitāye, to see (404)

477. The student will have remarked that several forms for the same root are often met with.

*Remarks.* (a) The Infinitive is used both *passively* and *actively*.

(b) The Dative of nouns in *āya* is often used with an infinitive sense.

(c) The Infinitive expresses purpose and may be translated by : "*for the purpose of, in order to.*"

### (B)—Derivative or Secondary Conjugation.

478. The Derivative Conjugation includes : (1) the Passive; (2) the Causative; (3) the Denominative; (4) the Desiderative and, (5) the Intensive.

479. It is called *Derivative Conjugation* because the above named five kinds of verbs are derived from the simple root with a well-defined modification of the sense of the root itself.

480. Except for the Causative, Derivative verbs are *not conjugated* in all the tenses and in all voices.

#### (1) THE PASSIVE.

481. The Passive Conjugation is formed by adding the suffix *ya* to the *root*.

482. The suffix *ya* having been added and the *Passive Base* obtained, the Personal Endings of either the Active Voice or of the Reflective Voice are added to the base.

483. *Ya* is affixed to the root in three ways :

(i) Directly after roots ending in a vowel.

- (ii) To roots in a double consonant, *ya* is joined by means of *i*, this *i* being lengthened to *ī*. It is also joined by means of *i* when a root ends in a consonant that does not generally reduplicate (*s*, *h* and *r*).
- (iii) It may be added directly to roots ending in a consonant; in this case the *y* of *ya* becomes assimilated to the last consonant of the root according to the Rules of Assimilation. (70, ff.)
- (vi) *Ya* is also added to the Special Base by means of *i*, lengthened.

#### EXAMPLES OF (i),

*Remarks.* (a) When *ya* is added to roots ending in a vowel, the vowel of the root undergoes some change especially vowels: *a*, *i* and *u*.

(b) Radical *ā* is changed to *ī* before *ya* and radical *i*, *u*, are lengthened to *ī*, *ū*.

Root.	Passive Base.
√dā, to give	dīya, to be given
√pā, drink	pīya, to be drunk
√dhā, to hold	dhīya, to be held
√ji, to conquer	jīya, to be conquered
√ci, to heap	ciya, to be heaped up
√ku, to sing	kūya, to be sung
√su, to hear	sūya, to be heard

(c) Radical long *ī* and *ū*, remain unaffected:

√bhū, to become	bhūya, to have become
√lū, to reap	lūya, to be reaped
√nī, to lead	nīya, to be led

(d) In some instances, the *long vowel* before *ya* is shortened, in which case the *y* is *doubled*.

*Root.**Passive Base.*

√ni, to lead

√nīya, or niyya

√su, to hear

√sūya, or suyya

√dā, to hear

√diya, or diyya

484. To the above bases the Active or Reflective Personal Endings being added, we obtain, for instance from √ji, to conquer, base jīya (or jīyya):

## PRESENT.

*Active.**Sing.**Plur.*1. jīyāmi, I am  
conquered

jīyāma, we are conquered

2. jīyasi, thou art  
conquered

jīyatha, you are conquered

3. jīyati, he is  
conquered

jīyanti, they are conquered

## PRESENT.

*Reflective.**Sing.**Plur.*1. jīye, I am  
conquered

jīyāmhe, we are conquered

2. jīyase, thou art  
conquered

jīyavhe, you are conquered

3. jīyate, he is con-  
quered

jīyante, they are conquered

Optative, (1) *jīyeyyam*, *jīyeyyāmi*; (2) *jīyetha*, *jīyeyyāsi*; (3) *jīyetha*, *jīyeyya*, etc., etc.

Imperative; (1) *jīye*, *jīyāmi*; (2) *jīyassu*, *jīyāhi*; (3) *jīyatam*, *jīyatū*.

## EXAMPLES OF (ii).

## Root.

## Passive Base.

√pucch, to ask	pucchīya, to be asked
√has, to laugh	hasīya, to be laughed at
√vas, to live	vasīya, to be lived upon
√kar, to make	kārīya, to be made
√sar, to remember	sarīya, to be remembered
√mah, to honour	mahīya, to be honoured

## EXAMPLES OF (iii)

√labh, to obtain	labbha, to be obtained (70, 71)
√pac, to cook	paccā, to be cooked (70, 71)
√bhañ, to speak	bhañña, to be spoken (70, 71)
√khād, to eat	khajja, to be eaten (70, 71, 34)
√han, to kill	hañña, to be killed (70, 71)
√bandh, to bind	bajjha, to be bound (70, 71, 74)

## EXAMPLES OF (iv).

√gam, to go	gacchiya, to be gone to
√budh, to know	bujjhīya, to be known
√īś, to wish, desire	icchīya, to be wished for

485. Long *i* before *ya* of the Passive, is sometimes found shortened, as: *mahīyati* or *mahiyaṭi*, to be honoured.

486. It is usual to form the Passive of the roots ending in a consonant preceded by long *ā*, by means of *i*; Ex. √*yāc*, to beg = *yāciyati*; √*aj*, to drive + prefix *pa* = *pāj*, to drive = *pājiyati*, to be driven.

487. *Ya* may be added directly after some roots ending a consonant without assimilation taking place and without the insertion of connecting vowel *i*; as: √*lup*, to cut, elide = *lupya + ti* = *lupyati*, to be elided, cut off; √*gam*, to go = *gamyā + ti* = *gamyati*, to be gone to.

*Remarks.* (a) We have already said that when the *i* before *ya* is shortened, initial *y* is reduplicated by way of compensation (483, d).

(b) *The Perfect, the Aorist, the Future and the Conditional* (which four tenses are called: General Tenses—see, 367) of the Reflective Voice, are often used in a passive sense.

488. The Passive may assume several forms from the same root :

√kar, to do, make, gives Passive: karīyati, kariyyati, kayirati (with metathesis), kayyati (with assimilation of *r*, 80).

√gam, to go, gives: gamīyati, gacchīyati, gamyati.

√gah, to take, gives: gayhati (metathesis); gheppati, quite an anomalous form.

√hā, to abandon: hāyati, hīyati.

#### 482. *Anomalous forms of the Passive.*

√vah, to carry, Passive Base=vuyh: vuyhāmī, vuyhasi, vuyhati, vuyhe, vuyhase, vuyhate, etc.

√vas, to live, Passive Base=vuss: vussāmī, vussasi, vussati, etc.

√yaj, to sacrifice, Passive Base=ijj, to be sacrificed: ijjāmī, ijjasi, ijjati, etc.

√vac, to speak, Passive Base=ucc: uccāmī, uccasi, uccati, etc.

√vac, to speak, Passive Base=vucc: vuccāmī, vuccasi, vuccati, etc.

490. Final *s* of a root, which is not usually susceptible of reduplication is, however, sometimes found reduplicated as: √dis, to see, becomes, dissati, to be seen; √nas, to destroy=nassati, to be destroyed.

## CAUSATIVE VERBS.

491. Causal or Causative verbs are formed by adding to the root the suffixes :—

(i) *aya*, which is often contracted to *e*.

(ii) *āpaya*, which likewise may be contracted to *āpe*.

492. (i) The radical vowel of the root is *gunated* or *strengthened* before these suffixes, if followed by one consonant only.

(ii) It remains unchanged when it is followed by two consonants.

(iii) In some cases, radical *a* is not lengthened although followed by a single consonant.

(iv) Roots in *i*, *ī*, and *u*, *ū* form their causal from the Special Base.

(v) Other verbs, too, may form the causal from the Special Base.

(iv) Some roots in *a* take *āpe*, *āpaya*.

## EXAMPLES.

## Root.

## Causative Bases.

√*pac*, to cook

*pāce*, *pācaya*, *pācāpe*, *pācāpaya*,  
to cause to cook (i)

√*kar*, to do

*kāre*, *kāraya*, *kārāpe*, *kārāpaya*,  
to cause to do (i)

√*gah*, to take

*gāhe*, *gāhaya*, *gāhāpe*, *gāhāpaya*,  
to cause to take (i)

√*mar*, to kill

*māre*, *māraya*, *mārāpe*, *mārāpaya*,  
to cause to kill (i)

√*sam*, to be appeased.

*same*, *samaya*, *samāpe*, *samāpaya*,  
to cause to be appeased (iii)

## Root.

## Causative Base.

√gam, to go	game, gamaya, to cause to go, (iii): we find also: gāme
√chid, to cut	chede, chedaya, chedāpe, chedā- paya, to cause to cut (i)
√bhuj, to eat	bhoje, bhojaya, bhojāpe, bhojā- paya, to cause to eat (i)
√rudh, to hinder	rodhe, rodhaya, rodhāpe, rodhā- paya, to cause to hinder
√bhid, to break	bhede, bhedaya, bhedāpa, bhedā- paya, to cause to break (i)
√su, to hear	sāve, sāvaya, sāvāpe, sāvāpaya, to cause to hear (iv)
√bhū, to be	bhāve, bhāvaya, etc. (iv)
√sī, to lie down	sāye, sāyaya, sayāpe, sayāpaya, to cause to lie down, (iv, iii)
√nī, to lead	nāyaya, nayāpe, nayāpaya, to cause to lead (iv, iii)
√pucch, to ask	pucchāpe, pucchāpaya, to cause to ask (ii)
√dhā, to place, with prefix pi	pidhāpe, pidahāpaya, to cause to shut. (vi) pidahāpe, pidahāpaya, to cause, to shut. (v, ii)
√dā, to give	dāpe, dāpaya, to cause to give (vi)
√thā, to stand	thape, thapaya, to place (vi, with a shortened).

## DOUBLE CAUSAL.

493. There is a double causal formed by adding *āpāpe* to the root.



## EXAMPLES.

Root.	Simple Causal.	Double Causal
√pac, to cook	pāce, pācāpe, etc.,	pācāpāpe, pācāpāpaya
√chid, to cut	chede, chedāpe, etc.,	chedāpāpe, chedāpāpaya
√bhuj, to eat	bhoje, bhojāpe, etc.,	bhojāpāpe, bhojāpāpaya

*Remarks.* The double causal may be translated by "So get to, or, to make to cause to....." For instance : to purisaṁ dāsaṁ odanaṁ pācāpāpeti, "He causes the man to cause the slave to cook the food" or "He gets the man to make the slave to cook the food."

Note that the first accusative or object purisaṁ may be, and is often, replaced by an *Instrumentive*.

494. The causative verbs are declined like the verbs 'nī, ī, of the 1st Conjugation, 3rd Division (393, 385), and like the verbs of the 7th Conjugation (379).

## EXAMPLES.

√pac, to cook, *causative base* : pāce, pācaya, pācāpe, pācāpaya, to cause to cook.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

1. pācemi, pācayāmi    pācāpemi, pācāpayāmi,  
I cause to cook.
2. pācesī, pācayasi    pācāpesī, pācāpayasi,  
thou causest to cook.
3. pāceti, pācayati,    pācāpeti, pācāpayati,  
he causes to cook.

*Plural.*

1. pācema pācayāma pācāpema, pācāpayāma,  
we cause to cook.
2. pācetha, pācayatha pācāpetha, pācāpayatha,  
you cause to cook.
3. pācenti, pācayanti, pācāpenti, pācāpayanti,  
they cause to cook.

## OPTATIVE.

*Singular.*

1. pāceyyāmi, pācayeyyāmi, pācāpeyyāmi,  
pācāpayeyyāmi, I should cause, etc.
2. pāceyyāsi, pācayeyyāsi, pācāpeyyāmi, pācā-  
payeyyāsi, thou shouldst cause, etc.
3. pāceyya, pācayeyya, pācāpeyya, pācāpayeyya,  
he should cause, etc.

*Plural.*

1. pāceyyāma, yācayeyyāma, pācāpeyyāma,  
pācāpayeyyāma, we should cause, etc.
2. pāceyyātha, pācayeyyātha, pācāpeyyātha, pācā-  
payeyyātha, you should cause, etc.
3. pāceyyum, pācayeyyum, pācāpeyyum, pācā-  
payeyyum, they should cause, etc.

*And so on for the other tenses.*

*Remarks.* (a) The bases in *e* and *pe* take the Sigmatic Aorist Endings (418, 419).

(b) The bases in *aya* take the other Endings (407, b). As, pācesim, pācesi, pācāpesim, pācayim, pācayi, pācāpayim, pācāpayi, etc.

*Causal Passive.*

405. The passive of a causal verb is formed by joining the suffix *ya* of the Passive to the Causative Base, by means of *i* lengthened to *ī*, final vowel *e* of the Causative base having been dropped first. The Causal Passive may be translated by "caused to....., made to do" the action expressed by the root.

## EXAMPLES.

Root.	Simple Verb.	Causal. Causal Passive.
√pac, to cook	pacati	pāceti, pācīyati, to be caused to cook
√bhuḥ, to eat	bhuñjati,	bhojeti, bhojīyati, to be caused to eat
√kar, to do	karoti	kāreti, kāriyati, to be caused to do

Remarks. Connective vowel *i* may also be found short.

496. Some verbs, although in the Causative, have merely a transitive sense as :

√car, to go, Causative *cāreti*, to cause to go = to administer (an estate).

√bhū, to be, Causative *bhāveti*, to cause to = to cultivate, practise.

497. Verbs of the 7th Conjugation form their causal by adding *āpe* or *āpaya* to the base, the final vowel of the base having first been dropped.

Root.	Base.
√cur, to steal	core
√kath, to tell	kathe
√tīm, to wet	teme

*Simple Verb.*

coreti, corayati  
 kathethi, kathayatti  
 temeti, temayati

*Casual.*

corāpeti, corāpayati  
 kathāpeti, kathāpayati  
 temāpeti, tempayāti

## DENOMINATIVE VERBS.

498. So called because they are formed from a *noun-stem* by means of certain suffixes.

499. The meaning Denominative Verb is susceptible of several renderings in English; it generally expresses "(a) *'to be act as, to be like to wish to be like'*" that which is denoted by the noun; (b) *'to wish for, desire'* that which is signified by the noun; (c) *'to change or make into'* that which is denoted by the noun; (d) *'to use as or make use of'* that which is expressed by the noun.

500. The suffixes used to form Denominative Verbal Stems are :

- (i) *āya, aya, e*
- (ii) *īya, iya*
- (iii) *a.*
- (iv) *āra, āla.* (These two rather rare).
- (v) *āpe.*

150. The base or stem having been obtained by means of the above suffixes, the Personal Endings of the tenses are added exactly as they are after the verbs.

*Noun-stem.*

pabbata, a mountain

macchara, avarice

*Denominative Verbs.*

pabbatāyati, to act like a mountain

macchārayati, to be avaricious  
 (lit., to act avariciously)

*Noun-stem.*

samudda, the ocean  
 nadī, river  
 araṇṇa, forest  
 dhana, riches  
 putta, a son  
 patta, a bowl  
 cīvara, a monk's robe  
 dolā, a palankin  
 vīṇā, a lute  
 upakkama, diligence,  
     plan  
 gaṇa, a following  
 samodhāna, connection  
 sārājja, modesty, shy-  
     ness  
 taṇhā, craving  
 mettā, love  
 karuṇa, mercy, pity  
 sukha, happiness  
 dukkha, misery  
 uṇha, heat  
 jaṭā, matted hair, tangled  
     branches  
 pariyosāna, end

*Denominative Verbs.*

sammuddāyati, to be or act  
     like the ocean  
 nadīyati, to do, act like a river  
 araṇṇiyati, to act (in town) as  
     in the forest  
 dhanayati, dhanāyati, to de-  
     sire riches  
 puttīyati, to desire, or, treat  
     as a son  
 pattīyati, to wish for a bowl  
 cīvariya, to desire a robe  
 dolāyati, to desire a, or, wish  
     for one's own palankin  
 vīṇāyati, to use the lute = to  
     play on the lute  
 upakkamālati, to make dili-  
     gence, to devise plans  
 gaṇayati, to wish for a follow-  
     ing or disciples  
 samodhāneti, to connect, join  
 sārājjati, to be shy, nervous  
 taṇhāyati, taṇhīyati, to crave  
 mettāyati, to love  
 karuṇāyati, to pity  
 sukhāpeti, to make happy  
 dukkhāpeti, to make miser-  
     able  
 uṇhāpeti, to heat, warm  
 vijaṭāyati, disentangle, comb  
     out  
 pāriyosānati, to end, to cease

502. Denominatives can also be formed from the stems of adjectives and adverbs; as :

dalha, firm, strong	dalhāyati, to make firm, strong
santam, being good	santarati, to act well, or handsomely
aṭṭa, afflicted, hurt	aṭṭayati, to hurt, afflict

*Remarks.* (a) Suffixes *āra* and *āla* are simply modifications of *aya*.

(b) There is an uncommon way of forming Denominative Verbs from nouns: the 1st, 2nd or 3rd syllable of the noun is reduplicated and the suffix *īyisa* or *yisa* added to the word thus reduplicated; the vowel *u* or *i* may or may not be inserted between the reduplication.\*

*Noun Stem.*

*Denominative Verb.*

putta, son

pupputtīyisati, to wish to be (as) a son

putta, a son

puttittīyisati, to wish to be (as) a son

kamalam, flower

kakamalāyisati or kamamalāyisati or kamalalāyisati; to be (as) a flower

(c) The Causal and Passive of all Denominatives are formed in the usual manner.

DESIDERATIVE VERBS.

503. As its very name indicates, the Desiderative Conjugation expresses the wish or desire to do or be, that which is denoted by the simple root.

504. The Desiderative is not extensively used in Pāli; however, it is frequent enough to warrant a careful perusal of the rules for its formation.

505. The suffix *sa* is the characteristic sign of this conjugation; another characteristic is the reduplication of the root according to the rules already given (372). The student ought first to look carefully over those rules.

# EXAMPLES.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Desid. Base.</i>	<i>Desiderative Verb.</i>
√su, to hear	sussusa	sussusati, to desire to hear = listen (33, 372—7c)
√bhuj, to eat	bubhukkha	bubhukkhati, to wish to eat (86; 372—5)
√tij, to bear	titikkha	titikkhati, to endure, be patient (86; 372—7b)
√ghas, to eat	jighaccha	jighacchati, to desire to eat (89; 372—7a)
√pā, to drink	pipāsa, pivāsa	pivāsati, to desire to drink (372—7a), (pivāsa, from the root).
√kit, to cure	cikiccha	cikicchati, to desire to cure, to treat (88; 372—2)

506. It will be remarked that the initial *s* of *sa* is mostly assimilated.

507. The bases being obtained, the personal endings are added as usual.

*Remarks.* The Causal and Passive are formed in the usual way.

## INTENSIVE VERBS.

508. The Intensive Verbs, also called Frequentative Verbs, express the frequent repetition or the intensification of the action denoted by the simple root. The characteristic of the Intensive conjugation is the reduplication of the root according to the usual rules (372).

509. These verbs are not very frequent in Pāli.

## EXAMPLES.

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Intensive Verb.</i>
√lap, to talk	lālappati, lālapati, to lament
√kam, to go	caṅkamati, to walk to and fro
√gam, to go	jaṅgamati, to go up and down
√cal, to move	cañcalati, to move to and fro, to tremble

The personal endings are added as usual.

## 510. DEFECTIVE AND ANOMALOUS VERBS.

√as, to be.

## PRESENT SYSTEM.

*Present.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. asmi, I am	asma, we are
amhi, I am	amha, we are
2. asi, thou art	attha, you are
3. atthi, he is	santi, they are

*Imperative.*

1. asmi, let me be	asma, let us be
amhi, let me be	amha, let us be
2. ahi, be thou	attha, be ye
3. atthu, let him, her, it be	santu, let them be



*Present Participle.**Active.*

*Masc.* santo, being  
*Fem.* santī, being  
*Neut.* santam, being

*Reflective.*

samāno, being  
 samānā, being  
 samānam, being

*Aorist.*

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. āsim, I was, I have been.      | āsimhā, } we were, we             |
|                                   | āsimha, } have been               |
| 2. āsi, thou wast, thou hast been | āsitha, you were; you have been   |
| 3. āsi, he was, he has been       | { āsum, they were, they have been |
|                                   | { āsimsu                          |

*Conditional.*

- |                                             |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. assam, if I were or should be            | assāma, if we were or should be            |
| 2. assa, if thou wert or should be          | assatha, if you were or should be          |
| 3. { assa,<br>siyā, if he were or should be | { assu, if they were or should be<br>siyum |

511

√ **hū**, to be.

(hū is a contracted form of root bhū).

*Present System.**Present.**Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. homi	homa	ahuva	ahuvamha
		ahuvam	ahuvamhā
2. hosi	hotha	ahuvo	ahuvaatha
3. hoti	honti	ahuva, ahuvā	ahuvu

<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Optative.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. homi	homa	heyyāmi	heyyāma
2. hohi	homa	heyyāsi	heyyātha
3. hotu	hontu	heyya	heyyum
<i>Present Participle.</i>			
<i>Masc.</i> honto	<i>Fem.</i> hontī	<i>Neut.</i> hontaṃ.	
<i>Aorist.</i>			

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
1. ahosiṃ, ahum	ahosiṃhā, ahumhā	
2. ahosi,	ahosittha	
3. ahosi, ahu	ahesum, ahum	
The Future has already been given (436).		
<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Fut. P.P.</i>
hotum.	huvā.	hotabbo

512. *√kar*, to do, make.

The present *Active* has already been given (403).

### PRESENT SYSTEM.

#### *Present.*

#### *Reflective.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. kubbe	kubbamhe kurumhe
2. kubbase, kuruse	kubbavhe, kuruvhe
3. kubbate, kurute	kubbante, kurunte
kubhati	

#### *Optative.*

#### *Singular.*

#### *Active.*

1. kare	kubbe	kubbeyya
kareyya		kayirā, kayirāmi
2. kare,	kubbe	kubbeyyāsi
kareyyāsi		kayirā, kayirāsi

*Singular.*

3. kare	kubbe	kayirā, kubbeyya
kareyya		

*Plural.*

1. kareyyāma	kubbeyyāma	kayirāma
2. kareyyātha	kubbetha	kayirātha
3. kareyyam	kubbeyyam	kayiram

*Imperfect.**Active.**Reflective.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. akara akaram	akaramhā	akarim	akarāmhase
2. akaro	akarattha	akarase	akaravham
3. akara	akaru	akarattha	akaratthum

The Aorist has been given (412).

*Imperative.**Active.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. karomi	karoma
2. kuru, karohi	karotha
3. karotu, kurutu	karontu, kubbantu

*Reflective.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. kubbe	kubbāmase
2. kurussu	kuruyho
3. kurutam	kubbantam

*Future.*

Besides the usual Future in *ssāmi*: *karissāmi*, *karissasi*, there is another form given in (436).

*Present Participle.**Active.**Reflective.*

<i>Masc.</i> karam, karonto	karamāno, kurumāno, karāno, kubbāno
-----------------------------	----------------------------------------

*Active.**Fem.* karonti*Neut.* karaṃ, karontaṃ*Reflective.*karamānā, kurumānā,  
karānā, kubbānākaramānaṃ, kurumā-  
naṃ, karānaṃ, kub-  
bānaṃ*Future Pass. Part.*

kattabbo, kātabbo, kāriyo, kayiro, kayyo, karaṇiyo.

*Remarks.* All the forms in *yira* are obtained through metathesis; in *kayyo* the *r* has been assimilated.*Present Passive Part.*

kariyamāno, kariyyamāno, kayīramāno, kariyamāno.

*Passive Base.*

The Passiva Base has several forms :

kāriya, kariyya, kariya, kayira.

513.

√ *dā*, to give.

The Present Optative and Imperative have already been given (395).

The student will remark that some of the tenses are formed directly on the root : the Radical Aorist, the Sigmatic Aorist, the Future and the Conditional.

*Radical Aorist.**Sing.*      *Plur.*

1. adaṃ      adamhā

2. ado      adattha

3. ada      adamsu, aduṃ

*Sigmatic Aorist.**Sing.*      *Plur.*

adāsiṃ      adāsimhā

adāsi      adāsitha

adāsi      adāsuṃ

adāsimsu

*Future.*

A.—(From the base).

*Sing.**Plur.*

1. dadissāmi      dadissāma

2. dadissasi      dadissatha

3. dadissati      dadissanti

B.—(From the root).

*Sing.**Plur.*

dassāmi      dassāma

dassasi      dassatha

dassati      dassanti

*Conditional.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. adassaṃ	adassambhā
2. adasse	adassatha
3. adassā	adassamsu

*Participles.**(Masculine).*

<i>Present</i>	<i>P. P. P.</i>	<i>Act. P. P.</i>
dadam, dadanto	dinno	dinnavā
<i>Fut. P.</i>		<i>Fut. P. P.</i>
dadassaṃ		dātabbo
dadassanto		dāyo
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Reflect.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
dadamāno	dadamānā	dadamānaṃ

## VERBAL PREFIXES.

514. The Prefixes or Prepositions, called in Pāli : *Upasagga* (23. *Remark*) are prefixed to verbs and their derivatives; they have been, on that account, called Verbal Prefixes. They generally modify the meaning of the, root, or intensify it, and sometimes totally alter it; in many cases, they add but little to the original sense of the root.

515. The usual rules of sandhi apply when prefixes are placed before verbs. When a prefix is placed before a tense with the augment *a*, the augment must not change its position, but remain between the prefix and the root, as *agā + ati = accagā* (74, *i*), and not ; *aatigā*.

516. These prefixes are as follows :

*Ā*—to, at, towards, near to, until, as far as, away, all round.

*Ākaddh*, to drag, draw = *ākaddhati*, to draw towards, to drag away.

√kir, to pour, scatter=ākirati, to scatter all over or around, to fill.

√cikkh, to show, tell=ācikkhati, to point out, tell to (to communicate).

√chad, to cover=acchādeti, to cover over or all around, to put on clothes (33, 35).

*Remarks.* This prefix reverses the meaning of some roots :

√dā, to give, but ādāti, to take.

√gam, to go, base :gaccha=āgacchati, to come.

**ati**, (before vowel =acc), *beyond, across, over, past, very much, very*; it expresses excess.

√kam, to step, go=atikkamati (33), to step over. to go across, go past, to escape, to overcome, to transgress, excel, to elapse.

√nī, to lead=atineti, to lead over or across, to irrigate.

√car, to act=aticarati, to act *beyond*, too much, in excess=to transgress.

**adhi**, (before vowels =ajjh) *over, above, on, upon, at, to, in, superior to, great.* It expresses sometimes superiority.

√vas, to live=adhivasati, to live in, to inhabit.

√gam, to go=ajjhagamā, he approached=adhi + augment a + gamā (Aorist).

√bhās, to speak=adhibhāseti, to speak to, to address.

**anu**, *after, along, according to, near to, behind, less than, in consequence of, like, gradually, beneath.*

√kar, to do=anukaroti, to do like, *vis.*, to imitate, to ape.

√kam, to go+anukkamati, to go along with, to follow.

√dhāv, to run=anudhāvati, to run after=to pursue.

√gah, to take=anugaṇhati, to take near, beneath =to protect.

**apa**, off, away, from, away from, forth: it also implies *detract*ion, hurt, reverence.

√ci, to notice, observe=apacāyati, to honour, respect; apaciti, reverence.

√nī, to lead=apaneti, to lead away, viz., to take away, to remove.

√gam, to go, =apagacchati, to go away.

√man, to think=apamaññati, to despise.

**api**, on, over, unto, close upon. This prefix is very seldom used; it is prefixed mostly to the roots: *dhā*, to put, set, lay, and *nah*, to bind, join. It is more-over found abbreviated to *pi* in most instances.

√dhā, to put, set, lay =pidahati, to cover, close, shut. Apidhanam, pidahanam, pidhanam, covering, lid, cover.

√nah, to bind, join=pinayhati, to bind on, join on.

**abhi**, to, unto, towards, against, in the direction of. It also expresses *excess*, *reverence*, *particularity*. (Before a vowel=abbh).

√gam, to go=abhigacchati, to go towards, approach.

√kaṅkh, to desire, abhikaṅkhati=to desire particularly, to long for, yearn.

√jal, to blaze=abhijalati, to blaze excessively, viz., fiercely.

√vand, to salute=abhivandati, to salute reverentially.

**ava**, down, off, away, back, asie, little, less. Implies also: *disrespect, disregard*.

*Remarks.* **ava** is often contracted to *o*.

√jā, to know = avajānāti, to despise.

√har, to take = avaharati, to take away. Avahāro, taking away.

√khip, to throw = avakhipati, to throw down.

√lok, luk, to look = oloketi, to look down = avaloketi.

**ud** (=the *u* of native grammarians: for the assimilation of final *d* to the following consonants see 58, 60, 62, 65. Before *h*, sometimes final *d* is lost and the *u* lengthened.

*Upwards, above, up, forth, out.*

√khip, to throw = ukkhipati, to throw up, get rid of; ukkhepanam, excommunication.

√chid, to cut = ucchindati, to cut off.

√thā, to stand = utthahati, to stand up, rise. Utthānam, rising.

√har, to take = uddharati (96), to draw out. Uddharam, pulling out.

*Remark.* **ud** reverses the meaning of a few verbs:

√pat, to fall = uppatati, to leap up, spring up.

√nam, to bend = unnamati, to rise up, ascend.

**upa**, unto, to, towards, near, with, by the side of; as, like, up to (opposed to *apa*), below, less.

√kadḍh, to drag = upukadḍhati, to drag or draw towards, to draw below or down.

√kar, to do = upakaroti, to do (something) towards, unto; *vis.*, to help, upakāro, help, use; upakaranam, instrument, *lit.* doing with.



√kam, to step, go = upakkamati, to attack, *lit.*, to go towards.

**ni** (sometimes lengthened to *nī*, and before a vowel = *nir*) out, forth, down, into, downwards, in, under.

√kam, to go = nikkhamati, to go out, to depart.

√dhā, to place = nidahati or nidheti, to deposit, hide.

√har, to take = niharati, to take out.

√han, to strike = nihanti, to strike down.

**pa**, onward, forward to, forth, fore, towards, with. It expresses : *beginning*.

√bhā, to shine = pabhāti, to shine forth, to dawn.  
Pabhā, radiance.

√bhū, to be = pabhavati, to begin to be, *vis.*, to spring up, originate.

√jal, to burn = pajjalati, to burn forth, to blaze.

**pati, paṭi**, against, back to, in reverse direction, back again, in return; to, towards; near.

√bhās, to speak = paṭibhāsati, to speak back, to reply.

√khip, to throw = paṭikkhipati, to refuse. Paṭikkhepo, refusing.

√kam, to step = paṭikkhipati, to step back, to retreat.

**parā**, away, back, opposed to, aside, beyond.

√kam, to go = parakkamati, to strive, put forth effort.

√ji, to conquer = parājeti, to overcome.

**pari**, around, all around, about, all about, all over. Expresses completeness, etc.

√car, to walk = paricarati, to walk around, *vis.*, to serve, honour. Paricāro, attendance; paricca, having encircled (= pari + √i + tyā).

√chid, to cut=paricehindati, to cut around=to limit, mark out.

√dhāv, to run=paridhāvati, to run about.

√jā, to know=parijānāti, to know perfectly, exactly.

**vi**, *asunder, apart, away, without*. Implies *separation, distinctness, dispersion*.

√chid, to cut=vicchindati, to cut or break asunder=to break off, interrupt.

√jā, to know=vijānāti, to know distinctly, to discern; vijānaṃ, knowing.

√kir, to scatter=vikirati, to scatter about, to spread.

**sam**, *with, along, together, fully, perfectly*.

√bhuj, to eat=sambhuñjati, to eat with.

√vas, to live=samvasati, to live together with; samvāso, living with.

*Remarks.* It should be borne in mind that two, and sometimes three, of the above prefixes may combine. The most common combinations are—

vyā, written byā (=vi+ā); vyākaroti, to explain (√kar); vyāpajjati, to fall away (√pad, to go).

ajjho (=adhi+o, o=ava), ajjhottharati, to overwhelm (√thar, to spread).

ajjhā (=adhi+ā), ajjhāvasati, to dwell in (√vas); ajjhāseti, to lie upon (√si).

anupa (=anu+pa), anupakhādati, to eat into (√khād), anupabbajati, to give up the world (√vaj, to go).

anupari (√anu+pari), anuparidhāvati, to run up and down (√dhāv); anupariyāti, to go round and round (√yā).

*anusam* (= anu + sam) *anusaṅgīto*, chanted together rehearsed; *anusañcarati*, to cross.

*samud* (= sam + ud), *samukkamsati*, to exalt; *samucchindati*, to extirpate (√chid); *samudeti*, to remove (√i).

*samudā* (= sam + ud + ā,) *samudācarati*, to address, practise (√car); *samudāhaṭo*, produced (√har); *samudāgamo*, beginning (√gam).

*samupa* (= sam + upa), *samupeti*, to approach (√i); *samupagacchati*, to approach.

*samā* (= sam + ā), *samāharati*, to gather (√har); *samāgamo*, assembly (√gam).

*samabhi* (= sam + abhi), *samabhisiñcati*, to sprinkle (√siñc).

*upasam* (= upa + sam), *upasamharati*, to bring together (√har); *upasamvasati*, to take up one's abode in (√vas, to live).

*Remark.* The student must be prepared to meet with some other combinations; the general meaning of a word can always be traced from the sense of the several combined prefixes.

517. It is important to note that the prefixes or prepositions are used, not only with verbs, but also with verbal derivatives, nouns and adjectives, as : *anutīre*, along the bank; *adhicittam*, high thought; *abhinīlo*, very black.

518. *pari* is often written : *pali* (72).

519. *pari*, *vi* and *sam* very often add merely an intensive force to the root.

520. After prefixes, *sam*, *upa*, *parā*, *pari*, and the word *pura*, in front, √kar sometimes assumes the form : **khar**. Ex. : *purakkharoti*, to put in front, to follow = *pura* + √kar; *parikkharo*, surrounding = *pari* + √kar.

521. A few adverbs are used very much in the same way as the Verbal Prefixes, but their use is restricted to a few verbs only. They are—

**āvi** = *in full view, in sight, in view, manifestly, visibly*. It is prefixed to the verbs: bhavati (√bhū) and karoti (√kar). Ex.: āvibhavati, to become manifest, visible, to appear, be evident; āvikaroti, to make manifest, clear, evident; to explain, show.

**antara** = *among, within, between*, used with √dhā, to put, place. Ex.: antaradhāyati, to vanish, disappear, hide; antaradhāpeti, to cause to vanish or disappear.

**attham** (*adv. and noun*) = *home; disappearance, disappearing, setting*; used with verbs of going = to set, disappear (of moon, sun and stars). Mostly used with the verbs gacchati and eti (√i,) to go. Ex.: atthaṅgacchati, to disappear, to set; atthameti, to set (of the sun).

**pātu** (before a vowel: pātur) = *forth to view, manifestly, evidently*, used with bhavati and karoti. Ex.: pātubhavati, to become manifest, evident, clear, to appear, to arise; pātubhāvo, appearance, manifestation; patukaroti, to manifest, make clear, evident; to produce.

**pura**, *in front, forward, before*, used almost exclusively with karoti: (cf. 520). Ex.: purakkharoti, to put or place in front, to appoint or make a person (one's) leader, and thence: to follow, to revere.

**alam**—*fit, fit for*, used with verb karoti in the sense of decorating. Ex.: alaṅkaroti, to adorn, embellish, decorate.

**tiro**—out of sight; across, beyond, prefixed to roots *kar* and *dhā*, in the sense of covering, hiding, etc. Ex.: *tirodhāpeti*, to veil, to cover, put out of sight; *tirodhānaṁ*, a covering, a veil; *tirokaroti*, to veil, to screen; *tirokaraṇī*, a screen, a veil.

522. Prefixes *du* and *su* are never used with verbs. (See Chapter on Adverbs) and prefix *a* (*an*), is very seldom so used.

523. To finish this chapter on Verbs, we will now give the paradigm of a verb fully conjugated.

*√pac*, to cook.

#### PRESENT SYSTEM.

(stem *paca*).

*Present.*

I cook, etc.

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Reflective Voice.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. <i>pacāmi</i>	<i>pacāma</i>	<i>pace</i>	<i>pacāmhe</i>
2. <i>pacasi</i>	<i>pacatha</i>	<i>pacase</i>	<i>pacavhe</i>
3. <i>pacati</i>	<i>pacanti</i>	<i>pacate</i>	<i>pacare</i> <i>pacante</i>

*Imperfect.*

I cooked, etc.

1. <i>apaca</i>	<i>apacamhā</i>	<i>apacim</i>	<i>apacāmhase</i>
<i>apacam</i>	<i>apacamha</i>		<i>apacamhase</i>
2. <i>apaco</i>	<i>apacattha</i>	<i>apacase</i>	<i>apacavham</i>
3. <i>apaca</i>	<i>apacu</i>	<i>apacattha</i>	<i>apacatthum</i>

*Imperative.*

Let me cook, etc.

- |                 |         |          |          |
|-----------------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. pacāmi       | pacāma  | pace,    | pacamāse |
| 2. pacāhi, paca | pacatha | pacassu, | pacavho  |
| 3. pacatu,      | pacantu | pacataṃ, | pacantaṃ |

*Optative.*

I should, would, could, can, etc., cook.

- |              |            |          |            |
|--------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. paceyyāmi | paceyyāma  | paceyyaṃ | paceyyāmhe |
|              | pace       |          |            |
| 2. paceyyāsi | paceyyātha | pacetho  | paceyyavho |
|              | pace       |          |            |
| 3. paceyya   | paceyyuṃ   | pacetha, | paceraṃ    |
|              | pace       |          |            |

*Present Participle.*

- |              |          |           |
|--------------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Mas.</i>  | pacāṃ    | pacamāno  |
|              | pacanto  | pacāno    |
| <i>Fem.</i>  | pacatī,  | pacamānā  |
|              | pacantī  | pacānā    |
| <i>Pent.</i> | pacāṃ    | pacamānaṃ |
|              | pacantaṃ | pacānaṃ   |

## AORIST SYSTEM.

(Stem : pac).

*Aorist.*

I cooked, or, I have cooked, etc.

- |           |            |         |           |
|-----------|------------|---------|-----------|
| 1. apaciṃ | apaciṃhā   | apaca   | apaciṃhe  |
| 2. apaci  | apacittṭha | apacise | apacivhaṃ |
| 3. apaci  | apacuṃ     | apacā   | apacuṃ    |
| apaci     | apaciṃsu   | apacū   | apaciṃsu  |

*Remarks.* The augment *a* may be left out.

## PERFECT SYSTEM.

(Stem : papac).

*Perfect.*

I cooked, etc.

1. papaca	papacimha	papaci	papacimhe
2. papace	papacittha	papacittho	papacivho
3. papaca	papacu	papacittha	papacire

*Perfect Participle Active.*

Having cooked.

*Act.**Refl.*

*Mas.* pacitavā  
pacitavanto  
pacitāvī

pacitavā  
pacitavanto  
pacitāvī

*Fem.* pacitavatī  
pacitavantī  
pacitāvinī

pacitavatī  
pacitavantī  
pacitāvinī

*Neut.* pacitavam  
pacitavantam  
pacitāvi

pacitavam  
pacitavantam  
pacitāvi

*Remarks.* The Perfect Participle is the same for the Reflective as for the Active Voice. (For formation see 465).

## FUTURE SYSTEM.

(Stem : pacissa).

*Future.*

I shall cook, etc.

1. pacissāmi,	pacissāma	pacissam	pacissāmhe
2. pacissasi,	pacissatha	pacissase	pacissavhe
3. pacissati,	pacissanti	pacissate	pacissante

*Conditional.*

If I could cook, etc.

1. apacissam apacissamhā apacissam apacissāmhase
2. apacisse apacissatha apacissase apacissavhe
3. apacissā apacissamsu apacissatha apacissimsu

*Future Participle.*

<i>Mas.</i> pacissam	pacissamāno
pacissanto	pacissāno
<i>Fem.</i> pacissatī	pacissamānā
pacissantī	pacissānā
<i>Neut.</i> pacissam	pacissamānam
pacissantam	pacissānam

*Infinitive* : pacitum.*Gerund* : pacitvā, pacitvāna, pacitūna, paciya*Fut. P.P.* : pacitabba, pacaniya.*P.P.P.* : pacita.524. Paradigm of *√cur*, to steal.

Base : coraya or core.

*Active.*

## PRESENT SYSTEM.

First form.	Second form.
(base, coraya).	(base, core).

*Present.*

1. corayāmi	corāyāma	coremi	corema
2. corayasi	corayatha	coresi	coretha
3. corayati	corayanti	coreti	corenti



*Imperfect.**(from base coraya only).*

1. acoraya	acorayamhā
acorayam	acorayamha
2. acorayo	acorayattha
3. acoraya	acorayu

*Imperative.*

1. corayāmi	corayāma	coremi	corema
2. corayāhi	corayatha	corehi	coretha
3. corayatu	corayantu	coretu	corentu

*Optative*

1. corayeyyāmi	corayeyyāma	coreyyāmi	coreyyāma
2. corayeyyāsi	corayeyyātha	coreyyāsi	coreyyātha
3. corayeyya	corayeyyum	coreyya	coreyyum
coraye			

*Present Participle.*

<i>Masc.</i>	corayam	corayanto	corento
<i>Fem.</i>	corayati	corayanti	corenti
<i>Neut.</i>	corayam	corayantaṃ	corentaṃ

## AORIST SYSTEM.

*Aorist.*

1. corayim	corayimhā	coresim	coresimhā
	corayimha		coresimha
2. corayi	corayittha	coresi	coresittha
3. corayi	corayum	coresi	coresum
	corayimsu		coresimsu

## PERFECT SYSTEM.

*The Perfect Tense of these verbs is not generally met with but it would be : cucora, cucore, cucorimha, etc).*

*Perfect Participle Active.*

Mas.	corayitavā	coritavā
	corayitavanto	coritavanto
	corayitāvī	coritāvī
Fem.	corayitavatī	coritavatī
	corayitavantī	coritavantī
	corayitāvinī	coritāvinī
Neut.	corayitavaṃ	coritavaṃ
	corayitavantam	coritavantam
	corayitāvi	coritāvi

## FUTURE SYSTEM.

*Future.*

1. corayissāmi, corayissāma coressāmi, coressāma
2. corayissasi, corayissatha coressasi, coressatha
3. corayissati, corayissanti coressati, coressanti

*Conditional.*

1. acorayissaṃ acorayissamhā
2. acorayisse acorayissatha
3. acorayissā acorayissamṣu

## FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

*Active.*

<i>Masc.</i>	corayissaṃ	coressaṃ
	corayissanto	coressanto
<i>Fem.</i>	corayissati	coressati
	corayissanti	corcassanti
<i>Neut.</i>	corayissaṃ	coressaṃ
	corayissantam	coressantam

*res. Participle Reflective.*

<i>Masc.</i>	corayamāno	corayāno
<i>Fem.</i>	corayamānā	corayānā
<i>Neut.</i>	corayamānaṃ	corayānaṃ

*Infinitive.* corayitum, coretum*Gerund.* corayitvā, coretvā*P. P. F.* corayitabbo, coretabbo*P. P. P.* corito, coritā, caritam

525. The Reflective Voice presents no difficulty : it is generally formed on the base in *aya* :

*Reflective.**Present.**Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. coraye	corayāmhe	acorayaṃ	acorayāṃmhasē
2. corayase	corayavhe	acorayase	acorayavhaṃ
3. corayate	corayante	acorayattha	acorayatthunṃ

*Passive Voice.*

526. The Passive Voice is formed in the usual way by joining *ya* to the base by means of vowel *i* lengthened to *ī*, the final vowel of base being dropped before *ī*.

## EXAMPLES.

*Present.**Singular.**Plural.*

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. corīyāmi, I am robbed     | corīyāma, we are robbed    |
| 2. corīyasi, thou art robbed | corīyatha, you are robbed  |
| 3. corīyati, he is robbed    | corīyanti, they are robbed |

*And so on for the other tenses.*

527. The Causal and the Denominative Verbs are conjugated exactly like *coreti*.

528. The following paradigm will familiarize the student with the changes which take place in the principal forms of the Verb :

<i>Root.</i>	<i>Special Base.</i>	<i>Active.</i>	<i>Reflective</i>	<i>Passive.</i>	<i>Causal.</i>	<i>Causal Passive.</i>
√pac, to cook	paca	paccati	pacate	paccate, paccati	{ pāceti, pācāpeti pācayati, pācāpayati	pāciyati pācāpiyati
√dā, to give	dadā	dadāti	dadate	dīyate, dīyati	dāpti, dāpāpeti	dāpiyati
√nī, to lead	ne, naya	neti, nayati	nayate	nīyate, nīyati niyyati	{ nāyayati, nayāpeti nayāpayati	nayāpiyati
√han, to kill	hana	hanati, han- ti	hanate	haññate, haññati	{ haneti, hanāpeti hanayati, hanāpayati	hanāpiyati hanāpiyati
√khād, to eat	khāda	khādāti	khādāte	khajjate, khajjati	{ khādeti, khādayati khādāpeti, khādāpayati	khādāpiyati khādāpiyati
√lū, to cut	lunā	lunāti	lunate	lūyate, lūyati	lāveti, lāvayati	lāviyati
√bhū, to be	bhava	bhavati	bhavate	bhūyate, bhūyati	{ bhāveti, bhāvayati bhāvāpeti, bhāvāpayati	bhāvīyati
√labh, to get	labha	labhati	labhate	labbhate, lab- bhati	{ labbheti, labhayati labbhāpeti, labbhāpayati	labbhāpiyati
√su, to hear	sunā	sunāti	sunate	sūyate, sūyati	sāveti, sunāpeti	sāvīyati
	suṇo	suṇoti				

## CHAPTER XI. INDECLINABLES.

529. Under the term "indeclinables" are included all those words which are incapable of any grammatical declension, that is: *Adverbs, Prefixes, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections.*

### ADVERBS.

530. Adverbs may be divided into three groups :

- (i) Derivative Adverbs, formed by means of suffixes.
- (ii) Case-form Adverbs;
- (iii) Pure Adverbs.

531. (i) **Derivative Adverbs.**

(a) These are formed by the addition to pronominal stems, and to the stems of nouns and adjectives of certain suffixes.

(b) Under this head come the "*Adverbial Derivatives from numerals*" given in (279ff), and the "*Pronominal Derivatives*" given in (336ff). The student ought now to read again these two classes of Adverbs.

(c) The suffix *to* (346) is also added to prepositions, nouns and adjectives, to form a very large class of adverbs; *to* is an ablative suffix (120) and therefore the adverbs formed with it have an ablative tense.

- (i) from prepositions: *abhito*, near; *parato*, further.
- (ii) from nouns: *dakkhinato*, southerly, on the south; *pācīnato*, easterly, on the east; *pitthito*, from the surface, from the back, etc.; *pārato*, from the further shore; *orato*, from the near shore.
- (iii) from adjective; *sabbato*, everywhere.

(d) suffixes *tra* and *tha* (346), showing place, are also used with adjectives : *aññatha* or *aññatra*, elsewhere; *sabbatha*, everywhere; *ubhayattha*, in both places.

(e) suffix *dā* (345) is likewise used with adjectives and numerals : *ekadā*, once; *sadā* = *sabbadā*, at all times, always.

(f) *dhi* is used like *dhā* (281, 283) : *sabbadhi*, everywhere.

(g) suffixes *so* and *sā* (122, e, d) likewise form adverbs : *bahuso*, in a great degree; *atthaso*, according to the sense : *balasā*, forcibly.

(h) *Iti* (347) is extensively used as the particle of quotation; it is often abbreviated to *ti*. (See Syntax.)

532.

#### Case-form Adverbs.

(a) some cases of pronouns and adjectives are used *adverbially*.

(b) *Accusative Case*. This case is very much used *adverbially* : *kim*, why; *taṃ*, there; *idaṃ*, here; *yaṃ*, because, since; from pronouns.

(c) From nouns : *divasaṃ*, during the day; *rattiṃ*, at night; *raho*, in secret; *saccaṃ*, truly; *atthaṃ*, for the purpose of.

(d) From adjectives : *ciraṃ* a long time; *khippaṃ*, quickly; *maṇḍaṃ*, stupidly.

(e) Some adverbs of obscure origin may be classed as the *accusative case* of nouns or adjectives long obsolete : such are : *mitho*, *mithu*, one another, mutually; *araṃ*, presently; *sajju*, immediately; *tunhī*, silently; *alaṃ*, enough; *sāyaṃ* in the evening; *isaṃ*, a little, somewhat; *jātu*, surely, certainly; *bahi*, outside.

*The Instrumentive.* This case also is much used adverbially.

From pronouns : *tena*, therefore ; *yena*, because.

From nouns : *divasena*, in a day ; *māsena*, in a month ; *divā*, by day ; *sahāsā*, suddenly.

From adjectives : *cirena*, long ; *dakkhinena*, to the south ; *uttarena*, to the north ; *antarena*, within.

*The Dative Case* ; the adverbial use of the Dative is restricted : *atthāya*, for the sake of, for the purpose of ; *cirāya*, for a long time ; *hitāya*, for the benefit of.

*The Ablative Case* is used frequently in an adverbial sense ; especially so is the case with pronouns,

*kasmā*, why ? *yasmā*, because ; *tasmā*, therefore ; *pacchā*, behind, after ; *ārā*, afar off ; *hetthā*, below.

*The Genitive Case* is seldom used adverbially ; from pronouns we have : *kissa*, why ? from adjectives : *cirassa*, long ; from nouns : *hetussa*, causally.

*The Locative* is very often used adverbially ; as : *bāhire*, outside ; *dūre* far ; *avidūre*, not far ; *samīpe*, *santike*, near ; *rahasi*, privately, in secret ; *bhuvī*, on earth, on the earth.

### (iii) Pure Adverbs.

By these are understood the abverbs which are not obtained by derivation and which are not case-forms ; such are :

*kira*, *kila*, they say, we are told that ; *hi*, certainly indeed ; *khalu*, indeed ; *tu*, now, indeed ; *atha*, *atho* and, also, then, etc., etc.

*na*, expressing simple negation ; *mā*, expressing prohibition ; *mā* is often used with the Aorist. *Nanu*,



used in asking questions to which an affirmative answer is expected. *Nu*, used in asking simple questions; *no*, not, *nāna*, surely, perhaps; *nānā*, variously.

The particle *kva*, where?

The above particles are called *nīpātā* by the grammarians, they number about two hundred.

Verbal Prefixes have already been treated of (514).

#### INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

(a) *a*, and before a vowel *an*, not, without, free from.

*abhaya*, free from fear; *abāla*, not foolish; *apasanto*, not seeing; *anāloketvā*, without looking.

(b) *du*, and before a vowel *dur*, bad, ill, hard, difficult, as: *dubbaṇṇo* (33 remark), ugly, ill-favoured; *dubbinīto*, ill-conducted; *duddamo*, difficult to tame; *duggo*, difficult to pass; *dujjano*, a bad man; *dukkaro*, difficult to perform; *dujjīvaṃ*, a hard life.

(c) *su*, has the contrary meaning of *du*: good, well, easy, it implies excess, facility, excellence; *subhāsito*, well spoken; *subahu*, very much; *sudanto*, well tamed; *sukaro*, easy to perform; *sulabho*, easy to be obtained.

*Remarks.* After *du*, the initial consonant is generally reduplicated; reduplication seldom takes place after *su*.

(d) *sa*, which is used instead of *sam* (516), expresses the ideas of "possession, similarity; with, and; like; including." *sabhāriya*, with (his) wife; *salajja*, having shame, ashamed; *sabhogā*, wealthy; *savihārī* living with; *sadevaka*, including the world of gods.

*Remarks.* The particle *sa* is the opposite of particle *a*, *an*.

## PREPOSITION.

533. It has been seen that Verbal Prefixes are properly prepositions and are used with nouns as well as verbs.

534. Many adverbs are used with a prepositional force along with nouns. Those of class (ii), Case-form-Adverbs, are seldom used as prepositions, except perhaps those in *to*.

535. Prepositions, or words used prepositionally, may govern any case, except the *Nominative and Vocative*.

536. Most of the Verbal Prefixes require the noun to be in one case or other.

537. The cases mostly used with prepositions or prepositional Adverbs are : the *genitive*, the *instrumentive* and the *accusative*.

But only a few are used *separately from* the noun-they govern.

For examples see "Syntax of Substantives."

## CONJUNCTIONS.

538. Indeclinables distinctly conjunctive are very few. The principal are :

(a) Copulative : *ca*, and, also, but, even. It is *never* used as the first word in a sentence ; *atha*, and, then, now ; *atho*, and, also, then.

(b) Disjunctive : *vā* (never at the beginning of a sentence) or ; *uda*, or ; *uda vā*, or ; *vā....vā*, either....or ; *yadi vā*, whether ; *yadi vā.....yadi vā*, whether.....or ; *atha vā*, or else, rather ; *na vā*, or not ; *tathā pi*, neve'theless.

(c) Conditional : *yadi*, *sace*, if; *ce* (never at the beginning of a sentence), if; *yadi evam*, *yajj*, *evam*, if so.

(d) Causal : *ki*, for, because; certainly.

#### INTERJECTION.

*Ahaha*, alas! oh! aho! ah! *aho vata*, oh! ah! *are*, sirrah! I say! here! *dhi*, *dhī*, shame! fie! woe! *bho*, friend! sir! I say! *bhaye*, I say! to be sure! *maññe*, why! methinks! *he*, oh! *sādhū*, well! very well! very good!

*General remarks.* The use of some particles will be given in the chapter on Syntax.

## CHAPTER XII.

### COMPOUNDS.

539. Declinable stems are frequently joined to one another to form *Compounds*. In the older language compounds are simple and rarely consist of more than two or three stems: but the later the language is, the longer and the more involved they become.

540. Compounds may also have an *indeclinable* as the first member; there are even a few compounds made up entirely of indeclinables.

*Remarks.* The Case-endings of the first member or members of a compound are generally dropped; only in a few instances are they preserved.

541. There are six kinds of Compound Words :

- (i) **Dvanda**—Copulative or Aggregative Compounds.
- (ii) **Tappurisa** — Dependent Derterminative Compounds.

- (iii) **Kammadhāraya**—Descriptive Determinate Compounds.
- (iv) **Digu**—Numeral Determinate Compounds.
- (v) **Abyayibhāva**—Adverbial Compounds.
- (vi) **Bahubbīhi**—Relative or Attributive Compounds.

*Remarks.* Native grammarians distribute the above into four classes by making Nos. iii and iv subdivisions of No. ii, Tappurisa; but this classification, through lack of sufficient distinctness, confuses the student unnecessarily. We shall therefore follow the above division (541).

### **Dvanda.**

(*Copulative or Aggregative Compounds*).:

542. The members of these compounds are co-ordinate syntactically, in their uncompounded state; each member would be connected with the other by means of the conjunction *ca*, and.

543. Dvanda Compounds are of two kinds:

- (i) The compound is a *plural* and takes the gender and declension of its last member.
- (ii) The compound takes the form of a *neuter singular* and, whatever the number of its members, becomes a *collective*. This is the case generally with the names of: *birds, parts of the body, persons of different sexes, countries, trees, herbs, the cardinal points, domestic animals, things that form an antithesis; etc., etc.*

*Remarks.* The following rules are given as to the order of the members of dvanda compounds:

- (a) words in *i* and *u* are placed first;
- (b) shorter words are placed before longer ones;

(c) *ī* and *ū* (long) are generally shortened in the middle of the compound;

(d) sometimes a feminine noun, in the middle of the compound, takes the masculine form, (candimasuriyā) sometimes, or remains unchanged (jarāmarañam).

#### EXAMPLES OF (i)

Samaṇā ca brāhmaṇā ca = samaṇabrāhmaṇā, samaṇas and brahmins.

Devā ca manussā ca = devamanussā, gods and men.

Devānaṃ ca manussānaṃ ca = devamanussānaṃ, of gods and men.

Candimā ca suriyo ca = candimasuriyā, the sun and the moon.

Aggi ca dhūmo ca = aggidhūmā, fire and smoke.

Dhammo ca attho ca = dhammatthā, the spirit and the word.

\* Sāriputte ca Moggallāne ca = Sāriputtamoggallāne, in Sāriputta and in Moggallāna.

#### EXAMPLES OF (ii)

*Note that the compounds which come under (ii), sometimes assume the form of the plural like those of No. (i).*

Mukhanāsikaṃ = mukhaṇ ca nāsikā ca, the mouth and the nose.

Chavimamsalohitaṃ = chavi ca mamsaṇ ca lohitaṇ ca, the skin, flesh and blood.

Jarāmarañam = jarā ca marañāṇ ca, old age and death.

Hatthapādam or hattapādā = hatthā ca pādā ca, the hands and feet.

Hatthiasṣam = hatthino ca assā ca, elephants and horses.

Kusalākusalaṃ *or* kusalākusalā = kusalaṃ akusalaṃ  
ca, good and evil.

Vajjimallaṃ *or* vajjimallā = Vajji ca Mallā ca, the  
Vajjians and the Mallians.

544. The compounds which take the plural form are called: *Itaritara*, because the members of the compound are considered separately; those that take the neuter singular form: *samāhāra*, because the several members are considered collectively; those that take either the plural *or* the neuter are called: *Vikappa-samāhāra*.

### **Tappurisa.**

(*Dependent Determinate Compounds.*)

545. In these compounds the first member is a substantive in any case but the Nominative and the Vocative, *qualifying, explaining or determining* the last member.

*Remarks.* (a) The Case-ending of the first member is elided:

(b) In a few cases, the Case-ending is *not* elided; these compounds are called: *Alutta Tappurisa*.

(c) The *ā* of such words as: *rājā, mātā, pitā, bhātā* etc., is shortened in the first member.

(d) Generally, a *tappurisa* follows the gender of the last member.

(i) *tappurisa* with *accusative case*.

(*Dutiya Tappurisa*).

Araññagato = araṇṇaṃ gato, gone to the forest.

Sukhappatto = sukhaṃ patto, attained happiness.

Saccavādi = saccaṃ vādi, speaking the truth.

Kumbhakāro = kumhaṃ kāro; a pot-maker = a  
potter.

Pattagāho = pattam gāho, receiving a bowl.

Atthakāmo = attham kāmo, wishing the welfare of.

(ii) tappurisa with *instrumentive case*.

(*Taliya Tappurisa.*)

Buddhabhāsito = Buddhena bhāsito, spoken by the Buddha.

Viññugarahito = viññūhi garahito, censured by the wise.

Sukāhaṭam = sukehi āhatam, brought by parrots.

Jaccandho = jātiya andho, blind by (=from) birth.

Urago = urena go, going on the breast = a snake.

Pādapo = pādena po, drinking with the foot (root) = a tree.

*Remarks.* In some tappurisa compounds, a word, necessary to express properly the full meaning, is altogether elided.

Gulodano = gulena saṃsaṭṭho odano = rice mixed with molasses.

Assaratho = assena yutto ratho = a carriage yoked with horses = a horse-carriage

Asikalaho = asinā kalaho, a combat with swords.

(iii) tappurisa with *dative case*.

(*Catutthi Tappurisa.*)

*Remarks.* In these compounds, the last member designates the object *destined for* or *attributed to* that which is expressed by the first member.

Kathinadussam = kathinassa dussam, cloth for the kathina robe (the kathina robe is a robe woven within a single day as a meritorious act, on a fixed day, each year).

Saṅghabhattaṃ = saṅghassa bhattaṃ, rice (prepared) for the clergy.

Buddhadeyyaṃ = Buddhassa deyyaṃ, worthy to be offered to the Būddha.

Rājārahaṃ = rañño arahaṃ, worthy of (*lit.* to) the king.

(b) Compounds formed by adding *kāmo* "desirous of," to an infinitive are considered to be tappurisas in the Dative relation \* as :

Kathetukāmo = kathetum kāmo, desirous to speak.

Sotukāmo = sotum kāmo, desirous to hear.

Gantukāmo = gantum kāmo, desirous to go.

(iv) tappurisa with *ablative case*.

(*Pañcamī Tappurisa.*)

*Remarks.* These express: *fear of, separation or going away from, freedom from, etc.*

Nagaraniggato = nagaramhā niggato, gone out from town.

Rukkhatpatito = rukkhasmā patito, fallen from the tree.

Sāsanacuto = sāsanamhā cuto, fallen away from religion.

Corabhīto = corā bhīto, afraid of the thief.

Pāpabhīruko = pāpato bhīruko, fearing sin.

Pāpajigucchi = pāpato jigucchī; loathing evil.

Bandhanamokkho = bandhanasmā mokkho, freedom from bonds or fetters.

Lokaggo = lokato aggo, greater than the world.

Mātujo = mātito jo, born from a mother.



(v) tappurisa with *genitive case*.

(*Chaṭṭhī Tappurisa*)

*Remarks.* (a) Tappurisas in the Genitive relation are by far the most common.

(b) Final *i* and *ū* of the first member are as a rule shortened to *i* and *u* respectively.

(c) The word : *ratti*, night, takes the form *rattam* at the end of a tappurisa.

Rājaputto = rañño putto, the king's son, a prince.

Dhaññarāsi = dhaññānaṃ rāsi, a heap of grains.

Naditīraṃ = nadiyā tīraṃ, the river-bank (from *nadi*).

Bhikkhunisaṅgho = bhikkunīnaṃ saṅgho, the assembly of the nuns (from *bhikkhunī*).

Naruttamo = narānaṃ uttamo, the greatest of men.

(vi) tappurisa with *locative case*.

(*sattamī tappurisa*.)

Araññavāso = araññe vāso, living in the forest.

Dānajjhāsayo = dāne ajjhāsayo, inclined to alms-giving.

Dhammarato = dhamme rato, delighting in the Law.

Vanacarō = vane carō, walking in the woods.

Thalaṭṭho = thale ṭho, standing on firm ground.

Pabbataṭṭho = pabbatasmiṃ ṭho, standing on a mountain.

*Anomalous Tappurisa.*

(a) Sometimes the *first* member of a Tappurisa is placed last :

Rājahaṃso = haṃsānaṃ rājā, the swan-king, but also : haṃsarājā.

*Alutta Tappurisa.*

(b) In these the Case-endings are *not* dropped:

Pabhaṅkaro = pabhaṅ karo, making light = the sun.

Vessantaro = vessaṅ taro, crossing over to the merchants (a king's name).

Parassapadaṁ = parassa padaṁ, word for another = Active Voice.

Attanopadaṁ = attano padaṁ, word for ones self = Reflective Voice.

Kutojo = kuto jo, sprung whence?

Antevāsiko = ante vāsiko, a pupil within = a resident pupil.

Urasilomo = urasi (loc.) lomo, having hair on the breast = hairy-breasted.

*The student will remark that the case of the first member may be any case but the Nominative and Vocative.*

546. (iii) **Kammadhāraya.**

*Descriptive Determinate Compounds.*

*Remarks.* (a) In Kammadhāraya Compounds, the adjective: *mahanta* assumes the form: *mahā*, and if the consonant which follows is reduplicated, the form: *maha*.

(b) The word: *santa*, good, being, takes the form: *sa* (Sans, *sat*).

(c) The word: *puma*, a male, rejects its final *a*.

(d) When the two members of a Kammadhāraya are feminine, the first one assumes the form of the masculine.

(e) The Prefix *na*, not, is replaced by *a* before a consonant, and by *an* before a vowel.

(f) Prefix *ku*, meaning bad, little, may become *ka* before a consonant, and *kaḍ* before a vowel.

(g) In their uncompounded state, the two members of a Kammadhāraya are in the same case.

(i) The Kammadhāraya Compound (which is also called : *Missakatappurisa*) is divided into nine classes :

(1) *Visesanapubbapada Kammadhāraya*, in which the determining or qualifying word is placed *first*, as :

Mahāpuriso = mahanto puriso, a great man.

Mahānadi = mahantī nadi, a large river.

Mahabbhayaṃ = mahantaṃ bhayaṃ, great fear.

Aparapuriso = aparo puriso, the other man.

Kaṇhasappo = kaṇho sappo, a black snake.

Niluppalaṃ = nilaṃ uppalaṃ, a blue lotus.

(2) *Visesanaparapada*, or *Visesanuttarapada-Kammadhāraya*; in this, the *second* member determines the first.

Naraseṭṭho = naro seṭṭho, the oldest man.

Purisuttamo = puriso uttamo, the greatest man.

Buddhaghosācariyo = Buddhaghoso ācariyo, the teacher Buddhaghosa.

Sāriputtathero = Sāriputto thero, the Elder Sāriputta.

(3) *Visesanobhayapada-Kammadhāraya*, the two members of which are determinate.

*Remarks.* A word, as for instance, *so*, *he*, is generally understood between the two members of these compounds.

Situn̐haṁ = sītaṁ (tañ ca) un̐haṁ, heat and cold.

Khañjakhujjo = khañjo (ca so) khujjo, (he is) lame (and) hump-backed.

Andhabadhiro = andho (ca so) badhiro, (he is) blind (and) deaf.

Katākataṁ = kataṁ (ca taṁ) akataṁ, (what is) done (and) not done.

(4) *Sambhāvanāpubbapada-Kammadhāraya*; in which the *first* member indicates the origin of the second term, or the relation in which the *second* term stands to the first. In these compounds such words as : *ili*, namely, thus, called; *evaṁ*, thus, called; *sañkhāto*, called, named, *huvā*, being, are generally understood, in order to bring out the full meaning of the compound.

Hetupaccayo = hetu (huvā) paccayo, the term (*middle term*) being, or considered as, the cause = the term which is the cause or condition.

Aniccasaññā = anicca iti saññā, the idea, namely, Impermanence.

Hīnasamato = hīno huvā samato, equal in being low, unworthy.

Dhammabuddhi = dhammo iti buddhi, knowledge (arising from) the Law.

Attadiṭṭhi = attā iti diṭṭhi, the (false) doctrine of personal identity.

(5) *Upamā* or *Upamānuttarapada-Kammadhāraya*, in these compounds, analogy is expressed between the two terms. The word : *viya*, like, is understood between the two members.

Buddhādicco = ādicco viya Buddhho, the sun-like-Buddha.

Munisīho = sīho viya muni, lion-like-sage, lion-sage.

So.

Munipuṅgavo, sage-bull.

Buddhanāgo, Buddha-elephant.

Saddhammaraṃsi = raṃsi viya saddhammo, Light-like-Good Law, the Light of the Good Law.

*Remarks.* The words : ādicca, sun, sīha, lion ; puṅgava, usabha, bull ; nāga, elephant, are frequently used as in the above examples, to denote : superiority, greatness, excellence, eminence, so that Buddhādicco may be translated : the eminent Buddha ; munisīho, the great sage ; munipuṅgavo, the eminent sage, etc., etc.

(6) *Avadhāranapubbapada-Kāmmadhāraya*, in which the first member specifies a general term. Native grammarians, in resolving these compounds, insert the word : *eva*, just, even (*but which in these examples cannot be translated into English*) between the two terms of the compounds. In English, these compounds must be translated as if they were in the Genitive relation.

Guṇadhanam = guṇoe vadhanam, wealth of virtues.

Sīlāchanam = sīlam eva dhanam, treasure of morality or of piety.

Paññāsattham = paññā eva sattham, the sword of wisdom.

Paññāpajjoto = paññā eva pajjoto, the lamp of wisdom.

Avijjāmalam = avijjā eva malam, the stain of ignorance.

(7) *Kunipālapubbapada-Kammadhāraya*, the first member of which is : *ku*, (see, *f*).

Kuputto = *ku* + *putto*, a bad son.

Kudāsā = *ku* + *dāsā*, bad slaves.

Kadannaṃ = *kad* + *annaṃ*, bad food.

Kāpuriso = *kā* + *puriso*, a bad man.

Kadariyo = *kad* + *ariyo*, badly noble = not noble = ignoble = miserly, stingy.

Kalavaṇaṃ = *ka* + *lavaṇaṃ*, a little salt.

(7) *Nanipātapubbapada-Kammadhāraya*, (see *e*).

Anariyo = *na* + *ariyo*, ignoble.

Anīti = *na* + *īti*, free from calamity = secure.

Anūmi = *na* + *ūmi*, not having waves, waveless.

Anatikkamma = *na* + *atikkamma* (*gerd.*) not transgressing or trespassing.

Anatthakāmo = *na* + *atthakāmo*, not wishing for the welfare of.

(9) *Pādipubbapada-Kammadhāraya*, in which the first member is *pā*, *pa*, or any other prefix.

Pāvacaṇaṃ = *pā* + *vacanaṃ*, the excellent word = Buddha's word.

(Native grammarians take *pā* to be the abbreviation of the word : *pakaṭṭho* = excellent).

Pamukho = *pa* + *mukho* (having the face towards), facing, in front of, chief.

Vikappo = *vi* + *kappo* (thought, inclination), option.

Atidevo = *ati* + *deva*, Supreme deva or God.

- (Note that *devā* becomes : *devo*),  
 Abhidhammo = abhi + dhammo (Law, doctrine) =  
 transcending Doctrine = Metaphysics.  
 Uddhammo = ud + dhammo, wrong or false doc-  
 trines.  
 Ubbinayo = ud + vinayo (Discipline for the monks)  
 = wrong Discipline.  
 Sugandho = su + gandho, good smell = fragrance.  
 Dukkataṃ = du + kataṃ, a bad, sinful act.

547

**Nouns in Apposition.**

Nouns in Apposition are considered to be Kamma-  
 dhāraya Compounds.

Vinayapiṭakaṃ, the Vinaya-Basket (a part of the  
 Buddhist Scriptures).

Āṅgajanapadaṃ, the Province of Bengal.

Magadharatṭhaṃ, the Kingdom of Magadha.

Citto gahapati, Citta, the householder.

Sakko devarājā, Sakka, the Lord of gods.

*Remark.* Sometimes the last member of a Kamma-  
 dhāraya, being *feminine*, assumes the masculine form.

*As :*

Dīghajaṅgho = dīghā + jaṅghā (*feminine*), long-  
 legged.

548.

**Digu (iv).**

(Numeral Compounds).

There are two kinds of Digu :

(i) *Samāhāra Digu*, which being considered as  
*collective*, takes the form of the *neuter singular* in *m̐*.

(ii) *Asamāhāra-Digu*, when the Digu does not ex-  
 press a whole, but the objects indicated by the *last*  
 member are considered *individually*, the compound, as  
 a rule, taking the form of the plural.

*Remarks.* (a) Some words, when last member of a Digu, change their final vowel to *a*, if it be any other than *a*.

(b) The stems only of the numerals are used as first members.

(i) SAMĀHĀRA-DIGU.

Tilokaṃ, the three worlds (collectively).

Tiratanaṃ, the Three Jewels (collectively).

Catusaccaṃ, the four Truths (collectively).

Sattāhaṃ = satta + ahaṃ (day), seven days = a week.

Pañcasikkhāpadaṃ, the five Precepts (collectively).

Dvirattaṃ = dvi + ratti, two nights (remark a).

Pañcagavaṃ = pañca + gavo, (remark a).

Tivaṅgulaṃ = ti + v (inserted, 28) aṅguli, three fingers.

Navasataṃ, nine hundred.

Catusahassaṃ, four thousand.

(ii) ASAMĀHĀRA-DIGU.

Tibhavā, the three states of existence.

Catudisā, the four-quarters.

Pañcindriyāni, the five senses = pañca + indriyāni.

Sakaṭasatāni = sakaṭa + satāni, one hundred carts.

Catusatāni, four hundred.

Dvisatasahassāni, two hundred thousand (dvi sata saḥassāni).

549. (v) **Adverbial Compounds.**  
(Abyayibhāva.)

*Remarks.* (a) These compounds have for first member an indeclinable (529 ff).



(b) The Abyayibhāva generally assumes the form of the accusative singular in *m̐*, and is indeclinable.

(c) If the final vowel of the last member is *ā* long, *ā* is replaced by *am̐*; other long vowels (except *ā*), are shortened.

## (i)

Upagaṅgaṁ = upa + gaṅgāyaṁ (*loc.*), near the Ganges.

Upanagaraṁ = upa + nagaraṁ, (*loc.*), near the town.

Upagu = upa + gunnaṁ (*plural*), close to the cows.

Anurathaṁ = anu + rathe, behind the chariot.

Yāvajīvaṁ = yāva + jīvā (*abl.*), as long as life lasts.

Antopāsādaṁ = anto + pāsādassa, within the palace.

Anuvassaṁ = anu + vassaṁ, year after year = every year.

Anugharaṁ = house after house = in every house.

Yathābalaṁ = yathā + balena, according to (one's) power.

Pativātaṁ = pati + vātaṁ (*acc.*) against the wind.

Tiropabbataṁ = pabbatassa tiro, across the mountain.

Uparipabbataṁ = pabbatassa + upari, upon the mountain.

Paṭisotaṁ = sotassa + paṭilomaṁ, against the stream

Adhogaṅgaṁ = gaṅgāya + adho, below the Ganges

Upavadhu = upa + vadhū, near (his) wife.

Adhikumāri = adhi + kumāri, the young girl.

## (ii)

Sometimes, however, the case-ending is retained; the case thus retained being mostly the *Ablative* and the *Locative*. But in most cases, the neuter

form is also met with for the same compound. The Ablative termination may be retained when the indeclinable is : *pari, apa, ā, bahi, yāva*, etc.

*Yāvajivā or yāvajivam*—as long as life lasts.

*Apapabbatā or Apapabbatam*—away from the mountain.

*Bahigāmā or bahigāmam*—outside the village.

*Abhāvaggā or ābhavaggam*—to the highest state of existence.

*Purāruṇā or purāruṇam (=aruṇamhā pure)*, before daylight.

*Pacchābhattā, or pacchābhattam*, after meal.

*Tiropabbatā or tiropabbate (loc.) or tiropabbatam*, beyond, on the other side of, the mountain.

*Anto-avīcimhi (loc.)*, in hell.

*Anutīre*, along the bank.

*Antaravīthiyam (loc.)* in the street.

*Bahīsāṇiyam (loc.)*, outside the curtain.

550. (vi) **Relative or Attributive Compounds.**  
(*Bahubbīhi*).

*Remarks.* (a). A *Bahubbīhi* Compound, when resolved into its component parts, requires the addition of such relative pronouns as : "he, who, that, which," etc., to express its full meaning ; a *Bahubbīhi* is therefore used *relatively*, that is, as an adjective, and, consequently, the final member assumes the forms of the three genders, according to the gender of the noun which it qualifies. A *Bahubbīhi* is equal to a relative clause.

(b) All the Compounds explained above (*Dvanda, Tappurisa, Kammadhāraya, Digu, Abyayibhāva*), become, if used as adjectives, *Bahubbīhi* Compounds.

(c) Bahubbīhi *being adjectives qualifying nouns*, must agree in gender, number and case with the noun which they qualify.

(d) It follows from (c) that a Bahubbīhi may be in any case relation but the *Vocative*.

The following are the different kinds of Bahubbīhi.

(1) *Pathama-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Nominative Case.

Chinnahattho puriso = hand-cut-man = a man whose hands have been cut off :

Here, *chinnahattho*, is the Bahubbīhi qualifying the noun *puriso*.

Lohitamakkhitam mukham = lohiteṇa makkhitam mukham, the mouth besmeared with blood; lohitamakkhitam is the Bahubbīhi.

Susajjitam puram, a well-decorated city; susajjitam is the Bahubbīhi.

(2) *Dutiyā-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Accusative Case; that is, the Bahubbīhi gives to the word which it determines or qualifies the sense of the *Accusative-relation*.

Āgatasamaṇo saṅghārāmo = imaṁ saṅghārāmaṁ samaṇo āgato, this monastery the priest came to = the monastery into which the priest came; Āgatasamaṇo = Bahubbīhi.

Ārūḥhanaro rukkho = so naro imaṁ rukkham ārūḥho, the tree up which the man climbed. Ārūḥhanaro = Bahubbīhi.

(3) *Tatiyā-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Instrumentive Case in which the Bahubbīhi gives to the word it determines the sense of the *Instrumentive relation*.

Jitindriyo samaṇo = yena jitāni indriyāni so samaṇo, the samaṇa by whom the senses have been conquered. Jitindriyo = Bahubbīhi.

Vijitamāro Bhagavā = so Bhagavā yena Māro vijito, the Blessed One by whom Māra was vanquished = the Blessed One who vanquished Māra. Vijitamāro = Bahubbīhi.

(4) *Catutthī-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Dative relation, that is, in which the Bahubbīhi gives to the word it determines the sense of the *Dative relation*.

Dinnasuṅko puriso = yassa suṅko dinno so, he to whom tax is given. Dinnasuṅko = Bahubbīhi.

Upanītabhojano samaṇo = so samaṇo yassa bhojanam upanītam, the priest to whom food is given. Upanītabhojano = Bahubbīhi.

(5) *Pañcamī-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Ablative Case in which the compound gives to the word determined the sense of the *Ablative relation*.

Niggatajano gāmo = asmā gāmasmā janā niggaṭā, that village from which the people have departed = an abandoned village. Niggatajano = Bahubbīhi.

Apagatakālakam vattham = idam vattham yasmā kālakā apagaṭā, the cloth from which (the) black spots have departed = a cloth free from black spots. Apagatakālakam = Bahubbīhi.

(6) *Chatthī-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Genitive Case in which the compound gives to the word it determines the sense of the *Genitive relation*.

Chinnahattho puriso = so puriso yassa hattho chinno, the man whose hands are cut off. Chinnahattho = Bahubbīhi.

Visuddhasīlo jano = so jano yassa sīlaṃ visuddhaṃ, that person whose conduct is pure = a moral person. Visuddhasīlo = Bahubbīhi.

(7) *Sattamī-Bahubbīhi*, Relative in the Locative Case, that is, in which the Bahubbīhi gives to the determined word the sense of the *Locative Case*.

Sampannasasso janapado = yasmiṃ janapade sassāni sampannāni, a district in which the crops are abundant = a fertile district. Sampannasasso = Bahubbīhi.

Bahujano gāmo = yasmiṃ gāme bahū janā honti, a village in which are many persons = a populous village, Bahujano = Bahubbīhi.

(c) The word determined by the Bahubbīhi Compound is as often understood as expressed; for example :

Dinnasuṅko (4) = he who receives taxes = a tax-collector.

Jitindriyo (3) = he who has subdued his senses.

Lohitamakkhito (1) = besmeared with blood.

Sattahaparinibbuto = dead since a week.

Somanasso = joyful (lit., he to whom joy has arisen).

Chinnahattho (6) = he whose hands have been cut off.

Māsajāto = a month old (lit., he who is born since one month).

Vijitamāro (3) = he who has conquered Māra = the Buddha.

(f) In some Bahubbīhi, the *determining* word may be placed either first or last without changing the meaning :

Hatthachinno or chinnahattho.

Jātamāso or māsajāto.

(g) Feminine nouns ending in *ī*, *ū* as well as stems ending in *tu* (= *tā*, see, 163, words declined like *satthā*), generally take the suffix *ka*, when they are the last member of a Bahubbīhi; *possession* is then implied:

Bahukattuko deso = a place in which there are many artisans.

Bahukumārikaṃ kulāṃ = a family in which there are many girls.

Bahunadiko janapado = a district with many rivers.

*Note that long ī is shortened before ka; the same remark applies to long ū.*

(h) When a feminine noun is the last member of a Bahubbīhi, it takes the masculine form if determining a masculine noun, and the first member, if also feminine, drops the sign of the feminine:

dīghā jaṅghā, a long leg; *dīghajaṅghā itthī*, a long-legged woman, but: *dīghajaṅgho puriso*, a long-legged man.

(i) The adjective *mahā*, may be used as the first member of a Bahubbīhi: *mahāpañño*, of great wisdom, very wise.

(j) Sometimes *ā* is added to the words: *dhanu*, a bow; *dhamma*, the Law, and a few others when last members of a Bahubbīhi:

Gandhivadhanu = *gandhivadhanvā* (27, ii), Arjuna, he who has a strong bow.

*Paccakkhadhammā*, but also *paccakkhadhammo* = to whom the Doctrine is apparent.

551. The student will have remarked that all the examples given above of Bahubbīhi, are *Digu*, *Tappurisa*, *Kammadhāraya*, *Dvanda*, *Abyayibhāva*, used relatively. To make the matter clearer, however, a few examples are here given.

*Dvanda used relatively.*

Nahātānulitto, bathed and anointed.

Kusalākusalāni kammāni, good and bad actions.

*Tappurisa used relatively.*

Buddhabhāsito dhammo = the Doctrine spoken by the Buddha = Buddhena bhāsito dhammo.

Sotukāmo jano = a person desirous to hear = one desirous to hear.

Nagaraniggato = one or he who has gone out of town.

*Kammadhārayu used relatively.*

Guṇadhano = rich in virtues.

Sugandho = fragrant.

Khañjakhujjo puriso = a lame and hump-backed man.

*Dighu used relatively.*

Dvimūlo rukkho = a two-rooted tree.

Pañcasatāni sakaṭāni = five hundred carts.

Sahassaraṁsī = the thousand-rayed = the sun.

*Abyayibhāva used relatively.*

Saphala = saha phala = fruitful (lit., having fruits).

Savāhano Māro = Māra with his *monture*.

Niraparādhō Bodhisatto = the faultless Bodhisatta.

**Upapada Compounds.\***

552. When the second member of a *Dutiyā-Tappurisa Compound* is a *Kita noun* or *Primary derivative* (see Chapter XIII—*Primary and Secondary Derivation*), and the first member a noun in the *Accusative relation*, the compound is called *Upapada*. Such a compound may therefore be called indifferently : *upapada* or *upapadotappurisa*, or simply : *tappurisa*.\*

---

\* *Naruttidīpani*—

## EXAMPLES.

Atthakāmo = atthaṃ kāmo, wishing for the welfare of (kāmo is a *kita* derivative).

Kumbhakāro = kumbhaṃ kāro, a pot-maker = a potter (kāro is a *kita* derivative). So :

Pattagāho = pattaṃ gāho, receiver of the bowl.

Rathakāro = rathaṃ kāro = carriage maker = cartwright.

Brahmacārī, = brahmaṃ cāri, one who leads the higher life.

Dhammaññū = dhammaṃ ñū, he who knows the Law.

*Anomalous Compounds.*

553. A few compounds are found which are quite anomalous in their formation, that is, they are made up of words not usually compounded together. These compounds must probably be considered as of very early formation, and be reckoned amongst the oldest in the language. We give a few examples :

Vitatho = vi + tathā, false, unreal.

Yathātatho = yathā + tathā, real, true, as it really is.

Itihā (= *iti*, thus + *ha*—lengthened to *ā*) = thus indeed = introduction, legendary lore, legend.

Itihāsa (= *iti*, thus + *ha*, indeed + *āsa*, was) = thus indeed it was = *itihā*.

Itihīti = *iti* + *itihā* = *itihā*, *itihāsa*.

Itivuttaṃ (= *iti*, thus + *vuttaṃ* P.P.P. of *vatti*, to say) = thus it was said. Name of a book of the Buddhist Scriptures.

Itivuttaka (= *iti* + *vuttaṃ* + *ka*—suffix) = *itivutta*.

Aññaṃaññaṃ (= *aññaṃ* + *aññaṃ*), one another.



Paramparo (= param + para) = successive.

Ahamahamikā (= aham, I + aham + ika—suffix),  
egoism, arrogance, the conceit of superiority;  
lit, connected with : I).

### *Complex Compounds.*

554. Compounds, as above explained, may themselves become either the first or the last member of another compound, or two compounds may be brought together to form a new one, and this new one again may become a member of another compound, and so on to almost any length, thus forming compounds within compounds. These compounds are almost used *relatively*, that is, they are Bahubbīhi. The student ought to bear in mind that, *the older* the language is, the fewer are these complex compounds, and the *later* the language, the more numerous do they become; it therefore follows that long compounds are a sign of decay and, to a certain extent, a test as to the relative age of a text.

### EXAMPLES.

Varaṇarukkhamūle, *at the foot of the varaṇa tree*,  
is a tappurisa compound in the genitive relation,  
and is resolved as follows :

varaṇarukkhasa mūle; varaṇarukkhasa is itself  
a kammadhāraya compound = varaṇa eva ruk-  
kha. It is therefore a tappurisa compound, the  
first member of which is a kammadhāraya  
compound.

Maranbhayatajjito, *terrified by the fear of death*,  
a bahubbīhi qualifying a noun understood, and  
is a tappurisa in the instrumentive relation :

marañabhayaena tajjito; marañabhaya is itself a tappurisa in the Ablative: maranā bhaya.

Sīhalaṭṭhakathāparivattanāṃ, *the translation of the Singhalese Commentaries*, is first: a tappurisa compound = Sīhalaṭṭhakathāya parivattanāṃ, second, another tappurisa: Sīhalāya aṭṭhakathā = the Commentaries of Ceylon = the Singhalese Commentaries.

Aparimitakālasaṅcitapuññabalanibbattāya, *produced by the power of merit accumulated during an immense (period of) time*, the whole is a bahubbīhi feminine in the Instrumentive. We resolve it shortly:

Aparimitakālasaṅcitapuññabala, a tappurisa determining nibbattāya;

Aparimitakālasaṅcitapuñña, a kammadhāraya determining bala;

Aparimitakālasaṅcita, a kammadhāraya determining puñña.

Aparimitakāla, a kammadhāraya determining saṅcita; lastly, aparimita is a kammadhāraya = a + parimita. In its uncompounded state it would run as follows: aparimite kāle saṅcitassa puññassa balena nibbattāya.

*Remark.* The student should follow the above method in resolving compounds.

*Changes of certain words in compounds.*

555. Some words, when compounded, change their final vowel; when last members of a bahubbīhi, they, of course, assume the endings of the three genders, according to the gender of the noun they determine. The most common are here given:

Go, a cow, bullock, becomes, *gu*, *gavo* or *gavaṃ*; pañcagu, bartered with five cows (pañcahi gohi kīto); rājagavo, the king's bullock (rañño go); dāragavaṃ, wife and cow (dāro ca go); dasa-gavaṃ, ten cows.

Bhūmi—place, state, stage, degree, storey, becomes *bhūma*: jātibhūmaṃ, birth-place (jātiyā bhūmi); dvibhūmaṃ, two stages (dvi bhūmiyo); dvibhūmo, two-storeyed. *Ka*, is sometimes superadded, as: dvibhūmako = dvibhūmo.

Nadī—a river, is changed to *nada*: pañcanadaṃ, five rivers; pañcanado, having five rivers.

Aṅguli—finger, becomes *aṅgula* (see, 548, a).

Ratti—night, is changed to *ratta* (see, 548, a); here are a few more examples: dīgharattaṃ, for a long time (*lit.*, long nights = dīghā rattiyo); ahorattaṃ, day and night (aho ratti); aḍḍharattō: midnight (rattiyā aḍḍhaṃ = the middle of the night).

Akkhi—eye, changes to *akkha*; visālakkho, large-eyed (visālāni akkhīni yassa honti); virūpakkho, having horrible eyes, name of the Chief of the Nāgas (Virūpāni akkhīni yassa—to whom (are) horrible eyes); saḥassakkho, the thousand-eyed—a name of Sakka (akkhīni saḥassāni yassa); parokkhaṃ, invisible, *lit.*, “beyond the eye” (akkhīnaṃ tirobhāgo).

Sakhā—(masc.)—friend, companion, becomes *sakho* vāyusakho, the breeze's friend = fire (vāyuno sakhā so); sabbasakho, the friend of all (sabbesaṃ sakhā).

Attā—self, one's self becomes *atta*, pahitatto, resolute, whose mind is bent upon = *lit.*, directed

towards (pahito pesito attā yena, by whom the mind is directed upon); *ṭhitatto*, of firm mind (*ṭhito attā assa*, whose mind is firm).

*Pumā*=male, a man, becomes *pum*, and final *m* is assimilated to the following consonant according to the usual rules: *pulliṅgaṃ*, the male sex: manhood, the masculine gender (*pum*+*liṅgaṃ*, characteristic, sign); *puṅkokilo*, a male cuckoo (*pum*+*kokilo*).

*Saha*—with, is abbreviated to *sa*, which is placed at the beginning of compounds. *ka* is sometimes super-added: *sapicuka*, of cotton, with cotton, as —*sapicukaṃ maṇḍalikaṃ*, a ball of cotton = cotton ball; *sadevako*, with the deva worlds; *saha* is used in the same sense: *sahodaka*, with water, containing water (*saha udaka*).

*Santa*—good, being, is also abbreviated to *sa* (see, 546, b) *sappurisa*, a good man; *sajjano*, well-born, virtuous (*sa*+*jana*, a person).

*Samāna*—same, similar, equal, is likewise shortened to *sa*: *sajāti* or *sajātika*, of the same species, of the same class (*sa*+*mānajaṭi*); *sajanapado*, of, or belonging to, the same district (*sa*+*mānajanapado*); *saṇāmo*, of the same name (*sa*+*māno nāmo*); *sānābhi*, of the same navel = uterine.

*Mahanta*—becomes *mahā* (see 546, a).

*Jāyā*—wife, takes the forms *jāni*, *jaṃ*, *tudaṃ*, \**jayaṃ*, before the word *pati*, lord, husband: *jāyāpati*, *jayam-pati*, *jānipati*, *jampati*, *tudampati*=husband and wife.

\* The *Nirutti-dīpani* has the following interesting note on the word *tudaṃ*: "Yathā ca Sakkaṭaganthesu 'dāro ca pati ca dam-paṭi,ti.' And, lower down: 'Tattha 'tu' saddo padapūraṇa-matte yujjati.'" (p. 186.)

*Verbal Compounds.*

556. Many nouns and adjectives are compounded with *√kar*, to do, and *√bhū*, to be, or with their derivatives very much in the manner of Verbal Prefixes.

557. The noun or adjective stems thus used change final *a* or final *i* to *ī*.

## EXAMPLES.

dalha, hard, firm; dalhīkaroti, to make firm;

dalhikaraṇam, making firm, strengthening.

bahula, abundant, bahulikaroti, to increase, to enlarge.

bahulikaraṇam, increasing,

bahulikato, increased.

bhasma, ashes, bhasmībhavati, to be reduced to ashes.

bhasmībhūto, reduced to ashes.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## DERIVATION.

558. We have now come to a most important part of the grammar: the formation of nouns and adjectives, otherwise called Derivation.

559. In Pāli, almost every declinable stem can be traced back to a primary element called: Root.

560. A root is a primitive element of the language, incapable of any grammatical analysis, and expressing an abstract idea. It is common in European languages to express the idea contained in the root by means of the Infinitive, for instance, *√gam*, to go; but it must be borne in mind that the root is *not* an infinitive nor indeed a verb or a noun but simply a primary element expressing a vague indefinite idea. This indefinite idea is developed out of the root and is made to ramify into a diversity of meanings, both abstract and concrete, by means of suffixes.

561. The roots of the Pāli language, with slight

variations in form, easily recognizable to the trained eye, are common with those of Sanskrit and consequently with many of the roots of the Indo-European languages.

562. Every true root is monosyllabic as : *nas*, to perish; *bhū*, to shine; *ruh*, to grow; *pac*, to cook. Roots which have more than one syllable are the result of (a) the union of a Verbal Prefix with the root itself, both having become inseparable in the expression of a particular idea; for instance; √*saṅgam*, to fight = *sa* + √*gam*, *lit.*, to come together, to close in upon; and (b) of reduplication (372ff) as √*jāgar*, to be wakeful, from √*gar* (Sanks. √ *gr*), to awake.

563. There are two great divisions of Derivation :

(i) *Kita* (*krt*), or Primary.

(ii) *Taddhita*, or Secondary.

564. Primary Derivatives are formed from the *root* itself; Secondary Derivatives from the Primary Derivatives.

565. Native grammarians recognise a third derivation, which they call : *uṇādi* (*uṇ* + *ādi*), from the suffix *uṇ* by which a few words are derived. But the *uṇādi* derivation is very arbitrary, and the connection between the *noun* and the *root* is not clear, either in meaning or in form. These *uṇādi* derivatives are included in the *Kita*-Derivation; *uṇādi* suffixes are therefore included in the *Kita*-Suffixes and will be distinguished by an asterisk (\*).

566. We shall, therefore, in the present chapter, treat of Primary and Secondary Derivations. A few hints only will be given on the *uṇādi* Derivation.

567. When suffixes, both *primary* (*kita*) and *secondary* (*taddhita*) are added to roots, nouns or adjectives

*guṇa* (103ff) frequently takes place; that is, *a* may be lengthened to *ā*, and *i* and *u* be respectively changed to *e* and *o*.

568. Whenever *guṇa* takes place by the addition of a suffix, native grammarians put an *indicatory sign* before or after the suffix to show that *guṇa* is to take place; this *indicatory sign* is generally the letter *ṇ* and sometimes the letter *r*. For instance: √*cur*, to steal + suffix *ṇa* = *cora*, a thief. Here the true suffix is *a*, the letter *ṇ* being simply *indicatory* that *guṇa* change must take place; again, √*kar*, to do + *ṇa* = *kāra*, a doer. But √*kar* + suffix *a* = *kara*, a doer; in this last example no *guṇa* takes place, and, therefore, the suffix has not the *indicatory sign*. This sign is called by grammarians: *anubandha*. It is therefore clear that the *anubandha* or "*indicatory sign of guṇa*" is not a part of the suffix.

569. European grammarians do not as a rule note the *anubandha*, but in this book it will be noted and put within brackets, and in small type, after the true suffix, thus (*ṇ*)*a*, or *kā* (*ṇ*). The true suffixes will come first, printed in bold type.

570. Again, some suffixes are shewn by native grammarians by means of some *conventional signs*: for instance: *ṇvu* is the conventional sign for suffix *aka*; *yu*, for suffix *anam*. Such conventional signs will be shewn within brackets after the true suffix; as: **anam** (*yu*); this means that *anam* is the true suffix, *yu* the conventional sign used by native grammarians to represent the suffix *anam*.

571. It must be remembered that sometimes even some of the prefixes explained in (514ff) undergo *guṇa*, as: *virajja* + *ka* = *verajjaka*; *paṭipada* + (*ṇ*) *a* = *pāṭipadā*; *vinaya* + (*ṇ*) *ika* = *venayika*.

572. Before some suffixes (generally those with the indicative ण) final *c* of the root is changed to *k*, and final *j* to *g*; as, √pac+(ण) a=pāka, a cook; √ruj+(ण) a+roga, disease.

573. The final vowel of a stem may be elided before a suffix.

574. The rules of sandhi and assimilation are regularly applied.

### (i) Primary Derivatives.

(*Kita*).

575. As has been said already, Primary Derivatives are formed directly from the roots by means of certain suffixes; these suffixes are called *kita suffixes*.

576. The *kita* suffixes are given below in alphabetical order to facilitate reference.

A—(a) (ण) (a). By means of this suffix are formed an extremely large number of derivatives, some of which take *guṇa* and some of which do not. It forms nouns (*substantive and adjective*) showing:

1st—*action*: √pac, to cook+a=pāka, the act of cooking, the cooking; √caj, to forsake+a=cāga, for saking, abandonment; √bhaj, to divide+a=bhāga, dividing; √kam, to love+a=kāma, love.

2nd—the *doer* or *agent*; √car, to roam+a=cāra and cara, a spy; √har, to take, captivate+a=hara, the Captivator (a name of Siva); √kar, to do, make+a=kara, that which does=the hand; also, kāra, a doer, maker.

3rd—*abstract nouns of action*: √kar + a=kara, action, making; √kam, to step, proceed+a=kama, step, succession, order; √kamp, to shake +a=kamṇa, shaking, trembling; √yuj, to join +a=yoga, joining.



4th—It forms *adjectives* : √kar + a = *kāra*, doing, making, also *kara*, causing, making; √car, to walk, roam, *cāra*, walking, roaming, and also : *cara*, do; √plu, to swim, float + a = *plava*, swimming, floating.

The student will readily understand that the root may be preceded by any prefix : sam + √gam + a = *saṅgāma*, assembly; pa + √vis, to enter + a = *pavesa*, entrance; anu + √sar, to go, move, walk + a = *anusara*, following, conformity. *The same remark applies to all the suffixes.*

577. From the adjectives formed by this suffix (4th) are formed the upapada compounds (552) : *kammakāro* = *kammaṁ kāro* (*kammaṁ karoti* 'ti), the doer of the act; *kumbhakāro* = *kumbhaṁ kāro* (*kumbhaṁ karoti* 'ti), the maker of the pot = potter.

578. Very similar in character with the upapada compounds are those compounds which are names of persons. In our opinion, they are simply and purely upapadas; but Kaccchāyana has the following rule : "saññāyaṁ A NU—that is : To form a proper name, suffix NU (=ṁ = Accusative Case), is added to the first member of the compound, which is the *direct object* of the root which forms the second member and after which the suffix A is added to denote the agent : *arindama*, the subduer of his enemies = *ari*, enemy + ṁ (nu) + √dam, to subdue + a. So : *Vessantara*, who has crossed over to the merchants (*vessa* + ṁ (nu) + √tar, to cross + a); *Taṇhāṅkara*, creating desire = *taṇhā* desire + ṁ (nu) + √kar + a. The name of a Buddha.

It will be seen from the above examples that the first member is in the Accusative Case and is governed by the second member which is an *agent-noun* formed by suffix A.

*Remark.* The nouns formed by A are masculine; they form the feminine according to rules (183), and the same applies to the adjectives (197).

**Abha\***—Used to form the names of some animals; the derivation is obscure. *Kalabha* or *kalabha*, a young elephant, from √kal, to drive, to sound; *usabha* a bull from √us (Sank. ṛṣ), to go, flow, push; *sarabha* a fabulous eight-legged kind of deer, from √sar (Sansk. ṣṛ), to injure, break, tear: *karabha*, a camel, from √kar, to do.

**Aka** (ṇvu)—forms a numerous class of action-nouns and *adjectives*, with guṇa of the radical vowel: √kar, to make, do+aka=*kāraka*, making, causing; maker, doer; √gah, to take receive+aka=*gāhaka*, taking, receiving, a receiver: sometimes a—y is inserted between aka and a root ending in a vowel, especially long dā: √d, to give+aka=*dāyaka*, a giver.

*Remark.* The feminine of these derivatives is generally in *kā* or *ikā*.

**Aia\***—forming a few nouns of doubtful derivation from, it is said, the roots: √paṭ to split, slit; √kus, to heap, bring together, cut; √kal, to drive, sound, throw, etc., etc., *paṭala*, covering, membrane, roof; *kusala*, that which is capable of cutting sin=meritorious act; these nouns are neuter.

**An**—only a few words are derived from this suffix: √rāj, to rule; +an=*rājan*, a king, ruler.

*Remark.* Nouns in *an* have the Nom. Sing. in *ā* (156 ff).

**Ana** (yu)—this suffix forms an immense number of derivative nouns and adjectives. The nouns are neuter, or feminine in *ā*; the adjectives are of the three genders. Guṇa may or may not take place; it is,

however, more common with the adjectives. Nouns :  $\sqrt{\text{pac}}$ , to cook, + ana = *pacanam*, the cooking,  $\sqrt{\text{gah}}$ , to take, + ana = *gahanam*, the seizing, taking;  $\sqrt{\text{thā}}$ , stand, to + ana = *thānam*, a place. Adjectives : pa + nud,  $\sqrt{\text{to}}$  push, move + ana = *panudano*, removing, dispelling;  $\sqrt{\text{ghus}}$ , to sound + ana = *ghosano* sounding;  $\sqrt{\text{kudh}}$ , to be angry + ana = *kodhano*, angry. The feminine of these adjectives is sometimes in *ā*, sometimes in *ī*. Fem.  $\sqrt{\text{sev}}$ , to serve, stay by, + ana = *sevanā*, also, *sevanam*, service, following;  $\sqrt{\text{kar}}$ , to execute + ana = *kāranā*, agony, torture.

**as**—This suffix forms a not very large, but important class of words, which have already been explained (160); *guṇa* sometimes takes place; they are declined like *manas* (159), their Nom. Sing. is in *o*.  $\sqrt{\text{vac}}$ , to say, speak + as = *vacas* (*vaco*), speech, word;  $\sqrt{\text{tij}}$ , to be sharp + as = *tejas* (*tejo*), sharpness, splendour.

**āni\***—Rarely found, it properly does not form nouns, but a vituperative negative imperative, with the prohibitive particle *a* (p. 242, *a*) before the root, and a dative of the person who is forbidden to act : *agamāni* = *a* +  $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$  + *āni* = you are not to go! as in “*para-desam te agamāni*”—you are not to go elsewhere! “*te idam kammam akarāni* (*a* +  $\sqrt{\text{kar}}$  + *āni*).

**avi** = *vī* (*tāvī*)—is used as has already been seen, to form participles (231) so also :

**āna** (448), also at, ant = *nta* (440) so that the Perf. Active, the Pres. Active and the Reflective Participles are considered by native grammarians as coming under the head of Kita Derivatives. The same remark applies to the P P.P.

**dhu**—so given by native grammarians is, properly : **adhu**; it forms but a few derivatives and is only another form of **thu** = **athu** (q. v).

i—forms a large class of derivatives, masc., fem. and neuter, as well as a few adjectives. The nouns may be *agent-nouns* or *abstract*. But the derivation is not always quite clear (principally of neuter nouns), hence, some grammars include this suffix among the *unādi*. *Strengthening* takes place in a few roots. Masc.: √ku, to sound, sing + i = *kavi*, one who sings = a poet; √mun = √man, to think + i = *muni*, one who thinks = a sage. Fem.: √lip, to smear, rub + i = *lipi*, a rubbing over, writing; √ruc, to shine, to please + i = *ruci*, light, pleasure. Neut.: *akkhi*, eye: *aggi*, fire, *aṭṭhi*, bone, and a few others of very doubtful derivation. Adj. √suc, to beam, glow, burn + i = *suci*, beaming, clear, pure.

By means of this suffix is formed, from √dhā, to bear, hold, a derivative: *dhi*, which forms many compounds, mostly masculine: sam + dhi = *sandhi*, connection, union (in grammar = euphony); *udadhi*, the ocean = *uda*, water + *dhi*, holding (*uda* + √dhā + i); others are: *nidhi*, a receptacle (*ni* + √dhā + i); *paridhi*, circle, halo (*pari* + √dhā + i).

Similarly, from √dā, to give, with prefix *ā*, we obtain: *ādi* (= *ā* + *dā* + i), and so forth, and so on, etc., *lit.*, = beginning. The word *ādi* is much used at the end of compounds.

**icca** (*ricca*), and **iriya** (*iriyā*),—are given by Kaccāyana as *kita* prefixes, but in reality they are not: both are suffixes of the F.P.P. (466): they are found only in the two examples: *kicca* and *kiriya* (*lit.*, what is to be done =) business: √kar + icca = *kicca* (with elision of radical *a* and of *r*); √kar + iriya = *kiriya* (with elision of radical *a* and of *r*). But the true derivation\* is √kar + *tya* = *kitya* (with elision of *ar*

\* Sans. *k* = √kr + *tya* = *krtya*; √kr + *ya* = *krya* = *kriya*.

and insertion of i) = *hicca*, according to the usual rules (74).

**ika**—is given for the only root: gam, to go: *gamika*, one who goes.

**in** = ī (ñī)—This forms a very great number of derivatives whose stem ends in **in**, and the Nom. Sing. ī (see 137, 173); they are properly possessive adjectives, sometimes used *substantively*. Guṇa as a rule takes place. √gah, to take, receive + in = *gāhin* (gāhī), taking, catching; √kar + in = *kārin* (kāri), doing; *pāpa-kārī*, a sinner; √yā, to go, *yāyin* (yāyi) going, *nagarayāyī* going to the town; √dā, to give, *dāyin* (dāyi), giving, a giver. Note that a y is inserted between the suffix and the roots ending in ā long. The feminine is formed according to rules (189).

**ina**—A few nouns are formed by this suffix; there is no guṇa: √sup, to sleep + ina = *suṇinam* (neut.), a dream, sleep. The derivation of some nouns and adjectives from this suffix is not apparent and clear, and it is also classed as an unādi; √dakkh, to be able, skilful + ina = *dakkhiṇa*, able, southern.

**ira**—The derivatives from this, nouns and adjectives, are few; there is no guṇa: √ruc, to shine + ira = *rucira*, brilliant, beautiful; √vaj, to be strong + ira = *vajira*, thunderbolt.

**iya, ittha**—are the suffixes used for the comparison of adjectives (238).

**isa\***—forms a few nouns, mostly masc., of rather obscure derivation: √pur, to fill + isa = *purisa* a man, person; √sun, to oppress + isa = *sunisa*, an oppressor; √il, to shake, come + isa = *ilisa*, one who shakes; √mah, to be great + isa = *mahisa*, mighty, a buffalo.

**itta\*** (ñitta),—is said to express *multitude* (?); the root is guṇated: √vad, to speak, to play (music) + itta = *vādittam*, the multitude of those who play music = an orchestra. The suffix and its derivatives are incomprehensible; but see—**tta**, **tra** where its probable formation will be explained.

**ivara\***—forms a few neut. nouns of doubtful connection with the roots from which they are derived: √ci, to gather, to depend upon + ivara = *cīvaram*, a monk's garment = that which is heaped upon or depended upon; √pā, to drink + ivara = *pīvaram*, beverage = that which is to be drunk.

**ka**—is added to very few roots which take guṇa; it forms *agent-nouns* and adjectives: √vad, to speak + ka = *vādaka*, one who speaks, a musician; playing (adj.); √dah, to burn + ka = *dāhaka*, burning (adj.). Note that these words would be better derived from, suffix aka (q. v.) √sukh (Sansk. *ḥus*) + ka = *sukkha*, dry, dried up; √thu (Sansk, *stū*) to dribble, drop + ka = *thoka*, a little. **ka** often takes a connecting vowel—*i* or *u* before a root, and forms the suffixes *ika*, *uka* (q. v.)

**la**—generally with connecting vowels: *a* or *i* before it. **la** is but another form of **ra** (q. v.): √thu, to be thick, strong + la = *thūla*, thick, fat; √cap, to waver, tremble + (a) la = *capala*, tremulous, fickle, giddy; √pā, to keep, guard + la = *pāla*, a guardian; √an, to breathe, blow softly + (i) la = *anila*, wind, breeze.

**lāna**—as well as **yāna** given as *primary* suffixes, are not at all suffixes; the true suffix is **āna**, which is a *taddhita* suffix (q. v.)

**ma** — forms some *abstract nouns*, *agent-nouns* and some adjectives: √bhī, to fear, be afraid of + ma = *bhīma*, terrible, fearful; √ghar (Sansk. *ghṛ*) to be warm, to glow + ma = *gharma* = *ghāmma*, heat, warmth. (Note the assimilation of *r* (80): √thu, to praise (S. *stu*), *thoma*, praise; √dhū, to shake, move hither and thither + ma = *dhūma*, smoke. This suffix, in Pāli, becomes nearly confounded with the next: **man**, and native grammarians are often at a loss in choosing between these two suffixes: the reason is that no word in Pāli being allowed to end in a consonant, they have included the stems in *an* in the vowel declension (152, 156—*c*, 157—*a*).

**man**—(given as *ramma* as well as *man* by Kaccāyana) forms *action-nouns*, masc. and neuter, in a few cases the noun being both masc. and neut.; the stems are in *an*, the nom. in *a*, *o* or *m̐*: √dhar, to hold, bear + man = *dhammo*, *dhammam*, nature, characteristic, duty, the Law; √kar + man = *kammam*, action, karma (Note the assimilation of *r*); √bhī, to fear + man = *bhemo*, fearful, terrible; √khi, to destroy, make an end of + man = *khemo*, secure, peaceful, *khemam*, safety, happiness. Most of the derivatives from *man* have migrated to the class of those formed by the last suffix (**ma**).

**māna**—this is the suffix of the Pres. Part. Reflexive already seen (447). (See, **āna**, above, pg. 276).

**mi**—the number of derivatives from this suffix is very restricted, they are masc. or fem. There is no *guṇa*; √bhū, to exist, become + mi = *bhūmi*, the earth, ground, a place; √ūr (S. *vr*), to roll, turn from side to side + mi = *ūmi* (*ūrmi*, note the elision of radical *r*), a wave.

**na**—the use of this suffix in forming a certain number of P. P. P. has been explained (458 ff); it also forms a few nouns; the root takes no guṇa, but through assimilation, the root is not always recognisable: √var, to cover, enclose + na = *vaṇṇa* (80, 83), colour, external appearance; √sup (S. svap), to sleep + na = *soppa* (= S. svapna), sleep; √phar (also phar = S. sphur. sphr), to shake, to make a jerky motion + na = *paṇṇa*, a feather, wing. From √tas (S. trs), *taṇhā*, thirst, craving; √ji, to conquer + na = *jina*, conqueror.

Connected with this **na**, are the suffixes **ina**, **una** (q. v.); also **tana**, (= S. tna), from this last is derived the word *ratana*, gift, blessing, jewel, from √rā, to bestow, + tna = *tana* (note that radical ā is shortened through the influence of the double consonant in *tna*. (See 34).

**ni**—from this we obtain but a few nouns, fem.: √hā, to quit, forsake + ni = *hāni*, abandonment, loss, decay; √yu, to fasten, to unite + ni = *yoni*, womb, origin, a form of existence.

**nu**—forms a few words mostly masc., some abstract and some concrete: √bhā, to shine, to be bright + nu = *bhānu*, beam, light, the sun; √dhe, to drink + nu = *dhenu*, yielding milk, a milch-cow.

**ta** I.—This suffix has been explained in the formation of the P. P. P. (450, ff). It also forms a few concrete nouns: √dū, to go far, to a certain distance + ta = *dūta*, messenger; √sū, to impel, to set in motion + ta = *sūta*, a charioteer. The student will remark that even these nouns look very much like P. P. P. (see 452—remarks). The suffix **ita**, also connected with the P. P. P. (452—ii), forms a few derivatives of doubtful connection with roots; *palita*, grey, *lohita*, red; *harita*, green, etc.



**ta** 2 (S. *tas*)—forms a few nouns : √*su*, to go, pass (+ *ta*=*sota*, a stream; √*śu*, to hear + *ta*=*sota*, the ear.

**tā** (*ritu*, *rātu*). (S. *tr* or *tar*)—This suffix forms a pretty large number of *agent-nouns*. (See 162). Remark that the base is in *u*, and the nominative in *ā* : √*mā*, to measure, mete out (food, etc.), + *tā*=*mātā*, mother; √*vad*, to speak, say + *tā*=*vattā*, one who says, tells, a speaker.

**ti**—This forms a very numerous class of *action-nouns*, fem., *agent-nouns*, and a limited number of *adjectives*. Fem : √*bhaj*, to divide + *ti*=*bhatti* (= *bhakti*, 426—*remark*, 59—*a*), division; √*kitt*, to praise + *ti*=*kitti* (with one *t* dropped), praise; √*gam*, go + *ti*=*gati*, (456), a going, journey. So : from √*muc*, *mutti*, deliverance; from √*man*, to think, *mati* (455), thought, etc. Adj. : √*sthā*, stand, last + *ti*=*sthiti*, lasting; √*pad*, to go, step + *ti*=*patti* (62), going, a foot-soldier.

**tu** 1—This is properly the suffix of the infinitive, which has become an Accusative (363—1): but it also forms nouns, chiefly masc., but of the other genders too : √*dhā*, to lay, put + *tu*=*dhātu*, masc., and fem., that which lay (at the bottom)=a primary element, a root, principle; √*tan*, to stretch + *tu*=*tantu*, a thread, masc.; √*si*, to bind + *tu*=*setu*, a tie, bridge.

**tu** 2—The same as **tā** (*ritu*, *rātu*), above.

**tra**, **ta** (*tran*, *ta*)—form a large number of derivatives chiefly denoting the agent, and concrete nouns : √*chad*, to cover over + *tra*, *ta*=*chatram*, *chattam*, an umbrella (in *chatra*, *d* has been dropped to avoid the collocation of three consonants; in *chatta* it is assimilated); √*gā* (a collateral form of √*gam*), to move + *tra*, *ta*=*gattam*, limb; √*nī*, to lead + *tra*, *ta*=*netram*, *nettam*, the eye=that which leads.

**tha**—the derivatives from this are not very numerous; √gā, to sing + tha = *gātha*, fem., a song, stanza, verse; √tar (S. tr), to cross + tha = *tittham* ford, landing-place (with connecting i).

**thu** and also **dhu**—give only a few derivatives, and have generally the form **athu**, **adhu**. √vip, vep, to shake, tremble + thu, dhu = *vepathu*, *vepadhu*, trembling; √vam, to throw up, vomit + thu, dhu = *vamathu*, *vamadhu*, vomiting.

**ra**—forms some nouns and adjectives; there is no guṇa, mostly found in the forms: **ira**, **ura**, (q. v.) and **ara**, Nouns: √bhand, bhad, to receive, praise + ra = *bhadra*; *bhadda* (adj.), laudable, good, worthy; √dhī, to think + ra = *dhīru* (adj.), wise, a wise man; √bham, to flutter, move in circles + (a) ra = *bhamara*, a bee.

**ri**—gives very few derivatives: √bhū + ri = *bhūri* (adj.), abundant, much.

**ru**—forms some nouns and adj.: √bhī, to fear, be afraid + ru = *bhīru*, timid; √can, to rejoice in, to gladden + ru = *cāru* (with elision of *n*), dear, gladsome.

**u** (ru, and u)—although making a large number of derivatives, substantive and adj., as the connection of the meaning with the root, is, in many cases, not easily traced, this suffix is classed with the Unādi; guṇa may or may not take place. √bandh, to bind + u = *bandhu*, a kinsman; √kar + u = *karu*, a doer, maker, artisan; √tan, to continue, extend + u = *tanu*, a son; √vas, to light up, shine + u = *vasu*, a gem, good.

**uka** (ṇuka)—forms a few nouns and adj. denoting the agent; there is guṇa; √pad, to tread, step + uka = *pāduka* (fem.), a shoe; √kar + uka = *kāruka* (masc.), a maker, artisan.

**una**—forms a few derivatives. √tar, to cross, pass away + una = *taruṇā*, just begun, young, fresh; √kar, to love, pity + una = *karuṇā* (fem.), compassion; √pis, to grind, hurt, destroy + una = *pisuno* (adj.), backbiting, malicious; a tale-bearer.

**ū**—forms some adj. and nouns mostly fem. √vid, to know + ū = *vidū*, knowing; vi + √ñā, to know + ū = *viññū*, knowing.

**ūra**—A few nouns only. √und to wet, moisten + ūra = *undūra*, a rat.

**usa,\* ussa**—The derivatives from this, very few, are doubtful: √man, to think + usa, ussa = *manussa, mānusa*, a man.

**vā**—this, as the suffix of the P. P. A., has already been noticed (465).

**ya**—This forms neut. nouns, most of them abstract in meaning. Assimilation takes place regularly, √rāj, to rule + ya = *rajjam*, kingship, kingdom; √vaj, to avoid + ya = *vajjam*, a fault = what is to be avoided; √yuj, to yoke, harness + ya = *yoggam*, a carriage, conveyance. It will be remarked that **ya** is also the suffix of the F. P. P. (466), which often, in the neut. sing., makes nouns.

**yāṇa** (see remark under : **iāṇa**).

*Remarks.* (a) The student will have remarked that the participles Pres. Active, Pres. Reflective; the P. P. P., the Perf. Active and the F. P. P. are considered as belonging to the Primary derivation.

(b) Suffixes: *tabba*, *anīya*, *ya* (*ṇya*) and *icca* are by native grammarians called *kicca* suffixes (466).

579. (ii) **Secondary Derivation.***Taddhita.*

*Remarks.* (a) These derivatives are called "secondary" because they are formed by means of suffixes from the "Primary" derivatives explained in the Kita derivation.

(b) Secondary derivatives are also formed from pronominal base (336, ff.)

(c) As in *kita*, *guṇa* may or may not take place.

580. The following remarks about the meaning of the Secondary derivation should be well noted :

- (i) The great bulk of *taddhita* suffixes form *adjectives* from nouns.
- (ii) These adjectives are very freely used as *substantives*, the masc. and fem. being generally nouns denoting the *agent*, while in the neut. they are *abstract*.
- (iii) The final vowel of a word is often elided before a *Taddhita* suffix.
- (iv) The *guṇa* affects mostly the *first syllable* of the word to which the suffix is added.

581. The following is a list in alphabetical order of the *taddhita* suffixes :

**a** (ṇa, and a)—An extremely large number of derivatives are formed by means of this suffix. It is added to nouns and to adjectives used substantively; these derivatives are *essentially adjectives*, used in most cases substantively. They primarily express *connection with, relation with or dependence on* that denoted by the "primary derivatives"; this *relation* is necessarily of many kinds, as shewn below :

(1) *Patronymics*; the masc. denotes *the son of*, the fem., *the daughter of*, and the neut., *the consanguinity*

or relation of, *Vasiṭṭha* + *a* = *Vāsiṭṭho*, the son of, *Vasiṭṭhī* the daughter of, *Vāsiṭṭham*, the relation of *Vasiṭṭha*. So: from *Visamitta* + *a* = *Vesamitto*, *Vesamittī*, *Vesamittam*; *Manu* + *a* = *Mānavo*, *Mānavī*, *Mānavam* (110, remark), the son, daughter or relation of *Manu*.

(2) *that which is dyed with*: *Kasāva*, a reddish yellow dye + *a* = *kāsāvo*, reddish-yellow, yellow; *kāsāvam*, a monk's robe (which is dyed with such dye). So: *haliddā*, turmeric + *a* = *hāliddo*, yellow, dyed with turmeric.

(3) *the flesh of*: *Sūkara*, a pig + *a* = *sokaram*, pork; *mahisa*, buffalo + *a* = *māhisam*, buffalo's flesh. As *adj.* = *sokaro*, relating to pigs; *māhiso*, relating to buffaloes.

(4) *belonging to*: *Vidisā* (a foreign country) + *a* = *vediso*, belonging to a foreign country, a foreigner; *Magadhā* (Southern Behar) + *a* = *māgadho*, belonging to, born in, *Magadhā*.

(5) *a collection of*: *Kapota*, a dove, pigeon + *a* = *kāpoto*, a group of doves, or, relating to doves; *mayūra*, peacock + *a* = *māyūro*, a group of peacocks; *adj.* belonging, relating to peacocks.

(6) *study, knowledge of, knowing*: *Nimitta*, an omen + *a* = *Nemitto*, a knower of omens = a fortune-teller; *veyyākaraṇam*, exegesis, grammar + *a* = *veyyākaraṇo*, a grammarian; *muhutta*, a while + *a* = *mohutto*, one who studies for a while only; also: relating to a moment = momentary.

(7) *The locality in which something or some one is or exists*: *Sakuṇa*, a bird + *a* = *sākuṇam*, the place wherein birds roost or resort to; *udumbara*, a fig tree + *a* = *odumbaram*, a place where fig-trees grow.

(8) *Possession of*: *Paññā*, wisdom + *a* = *pañño*,

possessing wisdom = wise; a wise man; saddhā, faith + a = *saddho*, one who has faith = believing, faithful, a believer.

**aka** (ṇaka)—Is said to denote the property of: manussa, a man + a = *manussakam*, that which belongs to man, the property of man = human. (See **ka**).

**aya**—For this, see **ya**.

**ālu**—(This is suffix **lu**, preceded by ā (See **lu**); denotes the tendency and forms some past participial adj. Dayā, sympathy, compassion + ālu = *dayālu*, compassionate; abhijjhā, covetousness = ālu = *abhijjhālu*, covetous = whose tendency is to be covetous; sīta, cold + ālu = *sītālu*, chilled, cold.

**āna** (ṇāna)—Forms patronymics: Kaccā (a proper name) + āna = *Kaccāno*, *Kaccānī*, *Kaccānam*, the son, daughter, offspring of Kacca; cora, a thief + āna = *corāno*, *corānī*, *corānam*, the son, etc.

**āṇa** (given as a Kita suffix in the forms: **lāṇa**, **yāṇa** (see pp. 279, 283) forms a very few derivatives; kalya, and by assimilation kalla, healthy, remembering, thinking of + āṇa = *kalyāṇo*, *kallāṇo*, blest (with health), happy, good.

**āyana** (ṇāyana).—Also forms patronymics: Kacca + āyana = *Kaccāyano*, *Kaccāyanī*, *Kaccāyanam*, the son, etc., of Kacca; Vaccha + āyana = *Vacchāyano*, *Vacchāyanī*, *Vacchāyanam*, the son, etc., of Vaccha.

**bya**—Is said to denote: the state of: Dāsa, a slave + bya = *dāsabyam*, the state of being a slave, slavery.

**dhā**—Has already been noticed (281).

**era** (ṇera)—Patronymics; the final vowel of the word is elided. Vidhava + era = *Vedhaverō*, the son of Vidhava; Naḷika + era = *Nāḷikero*, the son of Naḷika; samaṇa, a monk + era = *sāmaṇera*, the son, viz., the disciple of the monk = a novice.

**eyya** 1 (neyya)—*The state or nature of*: Alasa, idle + eyya = *ālaseyyam*, idleness; *sāpateyyam*, property (lit. one's own property) = sa, own + pati, master, owner + eyya (note the elision of *i* in pati).

**eyya** 2 (neyya)—*Patronymics*; with guṇa. Vinata + eyya = *Venateyyo*, the son of Vinata; māli, a gardener + eyya = *māleyya*, the gardener's son.

**eyya** 3—Denotes: *the nature of, the origin, the place where a thing is made, or a person or animal reared up*: *pabbateyyo*, whose place or abode is in the mountain, belonging to mountains = *pabbata* + eyya; suci, purity + eyya = *soceyyam*, the state of him who is pure, also: purification; kula, family + eyya = *koleyyo*, belonging to, reared up in a (noble) family = of good family; Bārāṇasī, Benares + eyya = *bārāṇaseyyam*, that which is made in Benares, lit., that the origin of which is in Benares.

**eyya** 4—Fitness, worthiness. This is a form of the F. P. P. already explained (468).

**i** 1 (ṇi).—Forms a few *patronymics*, from nouns in *a*: Duna + i = *Doni*, the son of Duna; Anuruddhā + i = *Anuruddhi*, the son of Anuruddhā; Jinadattha + i = *Jinadatthi*, the son of Jinadattha.

**i** 2 —After the word pura, town, city, indicates that which belongs or is proper to a city: *pori*, urbane, polite, affable.

**ika** (ṇika)—Is of very wide application and is added after nouns and adjectives; guṇa generally takes place. It denotes:

(1) *Patronymics*: Nādaputta + ika = *Nādaputtiko*, the son of Nādaputta; Jinadattha + ika = *Jinadatthiko*, the son of Jinadattha.

(2) *living by means of*: Nāvā, a boat + ika = *nāviko*,

one who goes or lives by means of a boat = a boatman; balisa, a fish-hook + ika = *bālisiko*, a fisherman; vetana, wages + ika = *vetaniko*, one who lives upon wages—a labourer.

(3) *going by means of* : pada, the foot + ika = *pādiko*, one who goes with his feet = a pedestrian; sakaṭa, a cart + ika = *sākaṭiko*, one who goes in a cart.

(4) *relating to* : samudda, the sea + ika = *sāmuddiko*, relating to the sea = marine; sakaṭa, cart, *sakaṭiko*, relating to carts.

(5) *playing upon* : viṇā, a lute, *veṇiko*, playing upon a lute, lute-player (27—ii, remark 2); bheri, a drum, *bhēriko*, a drummer, or, relating to a drum.

(6) *mixed with* : tela, oil, *telikaṃ*, that which is mixed with oil; oily; dadhi, curds, *dadhikaṃ*, that which is mixed with curds, and *dadhiko*, mixed with or relating to curds.

(7) *making, the maker* : tela, oil, *teliko*, an oil manufacturer.

(8) *connected with* : dvāra, door, *dvāriko*, one who is connected with a door = a door-keeper.

(9) *carrying upon* : khanda, the shoulder, *khandiko*, one who carries on the shoulder : aṅguli, finger, *aṅguliko*, one who carries on the finger.

(10) *born in or belonging to a place, or living in a place* : Sāvatti, *Sāvattiko*, of, born in, or, living in Sāvatti; Kapilavatthu, *kapilavatthiko*, of, born in, or living in Kapilavatthu.

(11) *studying, learning* : Vinaya, the Discipline, *venayiko*, one who studies the Vinaya; suttanta, a discourse (of the Buddha), *suttantiko*, one who studies, or knows the Discourses, *viz.*, the Suttaṭṭaka.

(12) *that which is performed by* : mānasa, the mind,



*mānasiko*, mental and *mānasikaṃ*, the act performed by the mind; *sarīra*, the body, *sārīriko*, bodily, corporeal, *sārīrikaṃ*, the act performed by the body.

(13) *that which is bartered for*: *suvanna*, gold, *sovaṇṇikaṃ*, that which is bartered for gold; *sovaṇṇiko*, relating to gold; *vattha*, cloth; *vatthikaṃ*, that which is exchanged for cloth; *vatthiko*, relating to cloth.

(14) *possession*: *daṇḍo*, a staff, *daṇḍiko*, one who has a staff, a mendicant; *mālā*, wreath, *mālika*, one having a wreath; *puttiko*, who has sons.

(15) *a collection, herd, group*: *kedāra*, a field, *kedārikaṃ*, a collection of fields: *hatthi*, elephant, *hatthikaṃ* a herd of elephants.

(16) *measure*: *kumbha*, a pot, *kumbhiko*, containing a kumbha measure, viz., as much as a pot; *kumbhikaṃ*, that which is contained in a pot.

**ima**—Denotes position or direction in space or time; it also shows relation: *pacchā*, behind, western, *pacchimo*, hindermost, western; *anta*, limit, end, *antimo*, last, final; So, *majjhimo*, middling, from *majjha*, middle.

**imā**—forms a limited number of possessive adj. *putta*, son. *puttimā*, who has sons; *pāpa*, evil, sin, *pāpimā*, sinful, evil.

This suffix is the same as that noticed (220, 222) with connecting vowel *i* before it.

**in** (ṇi)—forms a numerous class of possessive adj., very often used substantively (137); the stems are in *in*, and the nominative sing. in *i*: *Daṇḍa*, a staff *daṇḍi*, possessed of a staff; *manta*, design, plan, *mantī*, one replete with plans, a minister, adviser; *pāpa*, sin + *in* = *pāpī*, having sin, sinful.

**ina**—a few *possessive adj.*; mala, dirt, taint + ina = *malina*, dirty, tainted.

**issika**—This is the sign of the Superlative (238).

**iya**—A few *abstract nouns*, issara, lord, chief + iya = *issariyam*, dominion; alasa, lazy, *ālasiyam*, idleness.

**iya**—like **ima** above.

**iya**, as **iya** noticed in (466), is essentially a suffix of the F. P. P. The proper form of the suffix, it should be noted, is: *īya*.

**i 1**—See **in**, above.

**i 2**—Is used after the cardinals from 11 upwards to form ordinals expressing the day of the month, but also merely ordinals sometimes; ekādasa, 11 + *ī* = *ekādasī*, the 11th day or simply, the 11th; catuddasa, 14 + *ī* = *catuddasī*, the 14th day, or, the 14th.

**ka** (*kaṇ*)—Is much used to form adjectives, which in the neut. become abstract nouns; besides, it also forms a certain number of nouns masc. which, however, are adjectives used as substantives. Guṇa often takes place; rakkhā, protection + ka = *rakkhako*, protecting, a guard; rakkhana, defence + ka = *rakkhanako*, a guard; ramaṇeyya, pleasurable + ka = *rāmaṇeyyako*, delightful, *rāmaṇeyyakam*, delightfulness.

It has a few other meanings;

(1) *collection, group*; rājaputta, prince + ka = *rāja-puttaka*, a group or band of princes; manussa, man + ka = *mānussakam*, an assembly or group of men.

(2) *Diminutives, with, sometimes, a certain amount of contempt implied*; pada, foot, *pādako*, a small foot; rāja, king, *rājako*, a princeling; putta, son, *puttako*, a little son; luddha, hunter, *luddhako*, a young hunter.

(3) *Not seldom, ka adds nothing whatever to the primary meaning of the word*: kumāra, child, young

prince + ka = *kumārako*, do, do, nava, young, junior + ka = *navako*, do, do.

(4) It is much used after compounds, above all, after *Bahubbīhī* to form possessives, but often also redundantly.

(5) The use of **ka** after numerals has been noticed (286).

**kata**—Is considered as a suffix by some grammarians; it is used with prefixes: ni + *kata* = *nikata*, near; vi + *kata* = *vikata*, changed; pa + *kata* = *pākata*, evident, public, clear; sam + *kata* = *saṅkata*, narrow. It will be remarked that **kata** forms adjectives differing very little or even not at all from the meaning of the suffix to which it is added. It is probably a form of *kata* (P. P. P.), from *√kar*, to do, make.

**kiya**—Forms adj. denoting *relation*, *sennexion* (it is made up, no doubt, of **ka** + **iya**). Andha, the Andhra country + *kiya* = *andhakiya*, relating or belonging to the Andhra country; jāti, birth + *kiya* = *jatikiya*, relating to birth, congenital.

**la**—Forms a few adj. and nouns; it is often preceded by the vowels *i* and *u*: bahu, many + *la* = *bahulo*, abundant; vācā words + *la* = *vācālo*, talkative, garrulous; phena, froth = *phenila*, frothy, the soap plant, soap; mātā, mother + *ula* = *mātulo*, maternal uncle; vaṭṭa, a circle + *ula* = *vaṭṭulo*, circular; kumbhī, a pot, jar + *la* = *kumbhīlo*, a crocodile = one who has (a belly like) a jar. **la** is another form of **ra** (q. v.); **r** and **l** often interchange (47, vi).

**lu**—For this see: **ālu** above.

**ma**—Forms ordinals (see 274); **ma** has, sometimes, a superlative meaning (cf, **ima**, above). **ima** is the suffix **ma** with preceding vowel *i*.

**mā** (mantu)—(mant) is much used in forming adj. of possession. It has been explained already (220, 221, 222, 223, 224).

**maya**—With this suffix are formed adjectives denoting: *made of, consisting of*: *suvaṇṇa*, gold + *maya* = *suvaṇṇamaya*, made of gold, golden; *rajata*, silver + *maya* = *rajalāmaya*, made of silver.

**min** = **mi**—This forms a few possessive adjectives; the stems are in *in* and the nominative sing. in *ī* (cf., *in* and *ī*). *Go*, cow + *min* = *gomin* (*gomi*), possessing oxen, cattle, a possessor of cattle; *sa*, own + *min* = *samin* (*sāmi*) owner, master, lord.

**mi**—See last.

**ra**—From this are made a few adjectives; *guṇa*, in some examples, takes place. It is often preceded by the vowels *a* and *i*. *Madhu*, honey + *ra* = *madhura*, sweet, also sweetness; *Sikhā*, a peak + *ra* = *sikhāra*, having a peak, peaked, a mountain; *susa*, empty, hole + (*i*) *ra* = *susira*, full of holes; *kamma*, act, work + *āra* = *kammāro*, having or doing work, an artificer, smith.

**so**—Same meaning as **ra**; *medhā*, wisdom + *so* = *medhāso*, having wisdom, wise; *loma*, hair + *so* = *loma-so*, hairy.

**si**, **sei**—see below; (**vin** = **vi**).

**ta**—Forms a few nouns and adj., it is possessive suffix; *pabba*, a knot, joint, fulness + *ta* = *pabbata*, a mountain = that which has joints or fulness; *vaṅka*, bent + *ta* = *vaṅkata*, bent, crooked.

**tama**—Is the suffix used in forming the Superlative. (See 238, i).

**tana**—This suffix forms, from adverbs, a few adjectives: *svā* (sve, suve), tomorrow + *tana* = *svātano*, of tomorrow, belonging to tomorrow; *sanam* (S. *sanā*), of old, always + *tana* = *sanantano*, ancient, old, perpetual; *nū*, now + *tana* = *nūtano*, fresh, new.

**tara**—As the suffix of the comparative, **tara** has already been explained (238, i).

**tā** 1—This suffix forms a numerous class of feminine abstract nouns from adjectives and nouns, and expresses the *state, nature or quality of being* that which is denoted by the adj. or noun. *Lahu*, light + *tā* = *lahutā*, lightness; *sāra*, pith, marrow + *tā* = *sāratā*, essence, strength; *ati* (pref.), very, great + *sūra*, a hero + *tā* = *atisūratā*, great heroism.

**tā** 2—Denotes *multitude, collection*; *jana*, person, man + *tā* = *janatā*, a multitude of persons = folk, people; *gāma*, village + *tā* = *gāmata*, a collection of villages. So: *nagaratā*, *bandhutā*, etc., etc.

**tī**—Is used in forming the words expressing *decades* (cf. 251).

**tta**—(S. *tva*) forms neuter nouns of the same import as **tā** (1); *puthujjana*, a common man + *tta* = *puthujjanattam*, the state of being a common man; *Buddha*, a Buddha + *tta* = *buddhattam*, buddhahood; *atthi*, he is + *tta* = *atthitam*, the state of "he is" = existence.

**ttana**—Used in the same sense as the last (S. *tva*), *puthujjana* + *ttana* = *puthujjanattanam*, state of being a common man; *vedana*, sensation + *ttana* = *vedanattanam*, sensitiveness.

**tya=cca**—(S. *tya*), forms a few adjectives from indeclinables; *ni*, in + *cca* = *nicca*, inward, inmate = own, eternal, perpetual; *amā*, with, at home + *cca* = *amacco*, inmate, minister (for *tya=cca*, see 74).

**tha**—used in forming the ordinals; 4th, 5th, 6th and 7th (see 251).

**tham**—Makes adverbs from pronominal stems; it has been noticed in (337 ff).

**thā**,—This also has been noticed in (337 ff).

**vā** (*vantu*)—(*vant*), this suffix makes a very large class of possessive adjectives.

It is similar in character to **mā** (*mant*). (See 220 ff).

**va**—Forms a small number of adjectives; *aṇṇa*, wave + *va* = *aṇṇavo*, billowy, also the ocean; *kesa*, air + *va* = *kesavo*, hairy (a name of Viṣṇu).

**vi=vin**—Used to form adjectives of possession. The stems are in *in*, and the nominative sing. in *i*. It has been explained in (231 ff).

It is used also after some words the stem of which ends in *s* (158, 160), *tapas* (*tapo*), austerity, devotion + *vī* = *lapassī* (*tapasvī*), austere, a hermit; *yasas* (*yasō*), fame + *vī* = *yasassī* (*yasasvī*), renowned, famous.

Note that initial *v* of *vī*, is assimilated to final *s*, thus giving *ssī*. The suffix as given by native grammarians is, : **ssi**, which the student should assume as being the true suffix.

**ya** (*nya*)—This forms a very large class of nouns, mostly neuter abstract. *Guṇa* takes place in most cases, and assimilation is regular. *Alasa*, lazy + *ya* = *ālasyaṇ*, *ālassaṇ*, laziness; *kusala*, skilful + *ya* = *kosallaṇ*, skill, mastery; *pañḍita*, learned, clever + *ya* = *pañḍiccaṇ*, learning, scholarship; *vipula*, broad, large + *ya* = *vepullaṇ*, development; *samāna*, equal,

same + ya = *sāmaññho*, common, general; dakkhiṇa, affable + ya = *dakkhiñño*, affable, kind, *dakkhiñṇam*, affability, kindness.

*Roots used as suffixes.*

(KVI).

582. "Kvi" is an imaginary suffix denoting that the root itself is to be considered as the suffix. When a root ends in a consonant, this consonant is elided, as √gam = ga, √ghan, to kill = gha. As these form primarily adjectives, they assume, in certain cases, but not always, the endings of the three genders.

583. The student must bear in mind that native grammarians include Kvi in Kita. As, however, they are used as suffixes added after Primary and Secondary derivatives and indeclinables, I have preferred to treat them separately.

584. A list of the principal roots used as suffixes is here given.

**bhū**—(√bhū, to be), has generally the meaning denoted by the verb itself: abhi + bhū = *abhibhū*, mastering, overcoming, a conqueror (*abhibhavati*, to overcome); vi + bhū = *vibhū*, arising, expanding, ruler, lord (*vibhavati*, to arise, expand); sam + bhū = *sambhū*, offspring, progeny (*sambhavati*, to be produced, to spring from).

**da**—(√dā, to give, bestow); amata, immortality + da = *amatado*, he who bestows or confers immortality, conferring immortality; lokahita, the world's welfare + da = *lokahitado*, bestowing, or wishing for, the world's welfare.

**ga**—(gam, to go); pāra, the further shore + ga = *pārago*, gone to the further shore, viz., to Nirvāna; kula, family + upa, near + ga = *kulupago*, one who goes near a family = a family adviser.

**gū**—(a collateral form of  $\sqrt{\text{gam}}$ ); *addhā*, distance + *gū* = *addhagū*, going to a distance, traveller; *pāra* + *gū* = *pāragū*, as above, *pārago*.

**gha**—[ $\sqrt{\text{ghan}}$  = *han* (59, note)] to strike, kill, smite; *paṭi*, back, in return + *gha* = *paṭigho*, hatred.

**ja**—( $\sqrt{\text{jā}}$ , *jan*, to be born, produced): *paṇka*, mud + *ja* = *paṇkaja*, produced in the mud = a lotus; *aṇḍa*, an egg + *ja* = *aṇḍaja*, born from an egg = a bird.

**ji**—( $\sqrt{\text{ji}}$ , to conquer); *Māra*, the enemy of Buddha + *ji* = *Māraji*, conqueror of *Māra*.

**pa**—( $\sqrt{\text{pā}}$ , to drink); *pāda*, a foot + *pa* = *pādapa*, drinking by (with) the foot (root) = a tree.

**pa**—(*pā*, to guard, keep); *go*, cow + *pa* = *gopa*, cow-keeper.

**tha**—( $\sqrt{\text{thā}}$ , to stand, exist); *nāvā*, boat + *tha* = *nāvattṭha*, stored in a boat; *ākāsa*, the sky, the air + *tha* = *ākāsatṭha*, standing, resting, abiding in the sky.

**kha**—( $\sqrt{\text{khā}}$ , a collateral form of  $\sqrt{\text{khan}}$ , to dig) *pari*, round + *kha* = *parikkhā*, that which is dug all round = a moat.

**dada**—properly the base (371-4) of  $\sqrt{\text{dā}}$ , but considered as a root by some grammarians, is used in the same way as **da** above: *sabbakāmadadaṃ kumbhaṃ* = an all-desire-granting vessel = a vessel which grants all desires.

585. The Taddhita suffixes may be classified as follows:

*Patronymics*—*a*, *āna*, *āyana*, *era*, *eyya*, *i*, *ika*.

*Possessive*—*aka*, *ika*, *imā*, *in* = *ī*, *ra*, (*ara*, *ira*), *so*.

*ssī*, *mā* (*mat*, *mant*), *min* = *mī*, *va*, *vā*, (*vat*, *vant*), *vī* = *vin*, *ta*, *ina*, *la*.

*Group*, *collection*, *multitude*—*a*, *ika*, *ka*, *tā*.



*State of, quality, abstract idea*—bya, eyya, iya, tā, tta, ttana, ta.

*Relation (relating to)*—a, i, ika, ima, kiya.

The others may be classified as miscellaneous.

586. It will have been remarked that some suffixes are merely made up of a principal one which has taken the vowel *a* or *i* or *u* before it. Such are: aka, ika from **ka**; aya, iya from **ya**; ara, ira, ura from **ra**; ila from **la**.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### SYNTAX.

(*Kāraka*).

587 Syntax, in Pāli, does not offer any difficulty, for nearly all the relations of the substantives, adjectives and pronouns which will be explained in this chapter are very often obviated by compounding them as has already been explained in the chapter on Compounds; the student who has carefully read and mastered the Compounds has therefore done much and will understand ordinary prose without too much difficulty. However, there are peculiar uses of the Cases, without a knowledge of which a thorough mastery of the language would be impossible; we therefore invite the learner to read attentively the present chapter.

#### (I) ORDER OF SENTENCES.

588. The order of the Pāli sentence is very simple in character, compound sentences being rather the exception than the rule:

(1) Whether the sentence be *Simple*, *Compound* or *Complex*, the predicate must always come last.

(2) In a simple sentence containing an object, the order is : (i) Subject, (ii) object and (iii) predicate, as : *dāso kanham karoti*, the slave does the work.

(3) Words qualifying the subject or the object come before the subject and the object respectively, and adverbs before the verb : *ele layo purisā mahantaṃ sirin̄ sīghaṃ pāpunimsu*, these three men quickly attained to great glory.

*Remark.* Adverbs of time always come first in the sentence.

(4) The conjunctions, *pana*, but; *udāhu*, or, are used to form compound sentences; *ce*, *yadi* and *sace*, if, complex sentences.

#### (ii) THE ARTICLE,

589. There are no words in Pāli corresponding to the English articles; the words *eko*, *ekacce*, one, a certain, are often used in the sense of the indefinite article (253), and *so*, *eso*, that, this, do the function of the definite article : *so puriso*, the man; *sā itthī*, the woman.

*Remark.* Substantives not preceded by the above words may, according to the context, be translated as if preceded by the articles : *puriso* = a man, or the man.

#### (iii) CONCORD.

590. **1st of subject and predicate.**

(1) The predicate may be (i)—a finite verb : *bhikkhu gahapatiṃ avādi*, the monk admonished the householder; (ii)—a substantive with the verb “*hoti*” understood after it : *yadi etc gunā* if these (are = *honti*) virtues; (iii)—and adjective with “*hoti*” also understood : *tvaṃ atibālo*, thou (art = *asi*) very foolish; (iv)—a P.P.P. used as a finite verb, *so pi gato*, he too went, *lit.*, he too gone.

(2) When a finite verb is used as predicate, it must agree with the subject in *number and person*. When there are several subjects of different persons, the verb is put in the *first person plural*: so *ca tvaṃ ahaṃ gacchāma*, he, thou and I go. Should there be no subject of the first person, the verb is put in the *2nd person plural*: so *ca tvaṃ gacchatā*, he and thou go.

(3) In the case of an adjective or a P.P.P. taking the place of the predicate, the adj. and the P.P.P. must agree with the subject in *gender and number*: so *gato*, he went; *sā galā*, she went; *taṃ galaṃ*, it went; so *taruṇo*, he is young; *sā taruṇā*, she is young; *taṃ taruṇaṃ*, it is young.

(4) But if a substantive stands in the place of a verb, no such concord of gender or number needs take place; *appamādo nibbānapadaṃ* (= nibbānassa padaṃ), vigilance is the path to Nirvāṇa.

### **2nd of adjective and substantive.**

591. An adjective, or participle (which is of the nature of an adj.), when not compounded with the noun it qualifies, must agree with it in gender, number and case.

### **3rd of the relative and its antecedent.**

592. The relative must agree with its antecedent in gender, number and person.

(1) The relative may be used by itself, without the noun: *yo jānāti so imaṃ gaṇhātu*, he who knows let him take this. Note, that in the above the demonstrative pronoun *so* is used as a correlative.

(2) The relative is used instead of a preceding noun: *ahaṃ ekaṃ upāyaṃ jānāmi, yena amhe gaṇhi-*

*tum na sakkissati*, I know an expedient by which he will not be able to seize us.

(3) With the noun expressed : *yassa purisassa buddhi holi so mahaddhano ti vuccati*, to whom there is wisdom, he is called very wealthy = he who has wisdom is said to be very wealthy.

(4) Note that the clause containing the *relative* is put first ; sometimes the clause containing the *correlative* is placed first for the sake of emphasis as : *na so pitā yena putto na sikkhāpīyati*, he is no father by whom the son is not made to learn.

#### (iv) SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

593. This is properly *government*, for the term “*Kāraka*” expresses the relation between the noun and the verb ; so that any relation existing between words not connected with a verb cannot be called a *Kāraka*, consequently the Genitive and Vocative are not considered as cases, for they have no relation whatever with the verb ; they are therefore called *Akāraka*, non-cases.

#### 1. THE NOMINATIVE.

594. The nominative is used very much in the same way as in English ; it is the subject of the verb and the latter must agree with it in number and person ; see Concord of subject and predicate (590).

(i) The Nominative is used in apposition : *Mallikā Kosalarājā*, Mallikā, king of Kosala.

(ii) It is used *absolutely* in titles of books, that is, it does not take the termination proper to the nominative. : *Mahājanakujātaka*, the Birth-story of Mahājanaka.

#### 2. GENITIVE.

595. The true force of the genitive is “of” and “’s” expressing *possession*.

(i) The genitive therefore is used primarily to denote possession : *suvaṇṇassa rāsi*, a heap of gold; *rukkhassa sākhā*, the branch of the tree.

(ii) In such examples as the above, the genitive is often compounded with the noun it qualifies : *suvaṇṇarāsi*.

(iii) It denotes the whole of which a part only is taken; this is called "partitive genitive" : *brāhmaṇaṃ so paṇḍito*, he is clever among brahmins; *sabbayodhānaṃ atisūro*, the bravest of all warriors; *tumhākaṃ pana ekenā pi*, but even not one of you.

(iv) The genitive is used also with words expressing difference, equality, inequality : *tassa antaraṃ na passimsu*, they did not see the (its) difference; *sadiso pitu* the same as (his) father; *tulyo pitu*, equal to his father.

*Remark.* In these examples the ablative may also be used : *sadiso pitarā*.

(v) Words meaning dear or the reverse, take a genitive : *sā brāhmaṇassa manāpā*, she (was) dear to the brahmin.

(vi) Likewise words denoting : honour, reverence, etc. : *gāmassa pūjito*, honoured of the village; *rañño mānito*, revered by (of) the king.

*Remark.* In these examples the Inst. may also be used : *gāmena pūjito*.

(vii) Words of skill, proficiency, etc., and their opposites, govern the genitive : *kusalā naccagītassa*, clever in dancing and singing.

(viii) It is used with words indicating locality, time, distance : *amhākaṃ Buddassa pubbe*, before our Buddha; *gāmassa avidūre*, not far from the village : *upari tesaṃ*, above them.

(ix) *Believing in or well disposed towards: Buddhassa pasanno*, he has faith in the Buddha.

*Remark.* Here the Loc. may also be used: *Buddhe pasanno*.

(x) It is used also with words of *remembering or thinking of* (with sorrow), *pitying, wishing for, giving or apportioning, honouring, filling, fearing* and a few others: *mātussa sarati*, he remembers his mother (with sorrow); *na tesam koci sarati*, no body remembers them; *telassa dadāti*, he gives oil; *pūراتi bālo pāpassa*, he fool is full of evil; *sabbe tasanti daḍḍassa*, all ear punishment.

In these examples the Acc. may be used: *telam dadāti*.

*Remark.* Words of *fearing* also govern the Abl: *kin nu kho aham sunakkhā bhāyāmi?*\* Why should I fear the dog?

(xi) A genitive with a participle in agreement is called a *Gen. Absolute*. It generally denotes some attendant circumstances: *lassa bhattam bhuttassa udakam āharanti*, when he had finished his meal, they fetched him water.

(xii) Some other relations of the genitive will present no difficulty, as they have their exact parallel in English.

596. It will be seen from the remarks above that the genitive is often used instead of the Accusative, the Ablative, the Instrumentive and the Locative. It is also used; adverbially, as *kissa*, why? It will also be remarked that whenever the genitive is dependent on a verb, it is so on account of its *being used instead of another case*, as in *mātussa sarati*.

## 3. THE DATIVE.

597. The person or object *to* or *for* whom, something is given or done, is put in the Dative case. The Dat. is consequently used also as *indirect* object with transitive verbs having an Acc. as direct object.

(i) The Dat., then, expresses the relations which, in English, are usually denoted by the words *to*, *for*: *bhikkhussa cīcaram deti*, he gives a robe to the priest; *yuddhaya paccuggacchāmi*, I will set out for battle.

(ii) the Dat. is governed by verbs expressing praise or blame, anger, believing, disbelieving, assent, envy, pleasure or displeasure, injury, benefit, approval, forgiveness, salutation, blessing, hatred, abuse, concealing, worshipping, carrying. Examples: *Buddhassa silāghate*, he praises the Buddha; *yadi 'ham tassa kuppeyya*, if I should be angry with him; *duhayaṭi disānaṃ mogho*, the flood has injured the country; *tuyhaṃ saddahāmi*, I believe thee; *svāgataṃ te*, hail to thee! *soṭṭhi tuyhaṃ hotu*, fare thee well! *khama me*, forgive me! *mayhaṃ sapāte*, he swears at or, reviles me; *tassa sampaticchi*, he assented to it; *ussuṇanti dujjanā-guṇavantānaṃ*, wicked people envy the virtuous; *tassa aṭṭaṃ āhāri*, he told him a story; *devā pi lesaṃ pihayanti*, even the gods desire them=envy them; *samaṇassa rocate saaccaṃ*, truth pleases a monk.

(iii) The Dat. is commonly used with the verb "to be" to express possession: *puttā me n'atthi*, no sons are to me=I have no sons.

*Remark.* When the verb "hoti" is used with the Dat. to express possession, it is generally put in the

*singular*, even when, as in the above example, what is possessed is *plural*.

(iv) The word *alam*, enough, fit, governs the Dat. : *alam kukkucāya*, enough of doubt ! *alam mallo mallassa*, sufficient is a warrior for a warrior ! = a warrior is match for a warrior.

(v) The words, *attha*, object, purpose ; *hita*, benefit, blessing ; and *sukha*, happiness, are used in the Dat. with the meaning respectively of : for the purpose of, for ; for the benefit of ; for the happiness of ; and they govern a Gen. : *ropanassa atthāya*, or *ropanatthāya*, for the purpose of sowing ; *devamanussānam hitāya*, for the benefit of gods and men ; *lassa sukhāya*, for his happiness.

(vi) The Dat. may denote *the purpose for which*, and then governs a Gen. : *dārassa bharayāya*, for the purpose of maintaining a wife = for the maintenance of a wife = to maintain a wife.

*Remark.* It will be seen from this example that the Dat. in *āya* has the force of an Infinitive.

(vii) The Dat. is also used with the verb *maññati*, to consider, esteem, when contempt is implied : *kalinagarassa tuyham maññe*, I consider thee as chaff = a fig for you ! *jīvitam tiṇāya na maññe*, I do not consider life (so much) as grass = I do not care in the least for life.

(viii) The place to which motion is directed is sometimes put in the Dat. : *appa saggāya gacchati*, (only) the few go to heaven ; *nirayāya upakaddhati*, drags down to hell ; *so maṃ udakāya neti*, he takes me in the water.

(ix) The Dat. is often used instead of the Accusative, and also of the Locative.



598

## 4. THE ACCUSATIVE.

(i) The Accusative Case is generally governed by transitive verbs : *ratham karoti*, he makes a carriage; *āhāro balam janeti*, food produces (=gives) strength.

(ii) All verbs implying *motion* govern the Acc. : *nagaram gacchati*, he goes to town; *Bhagavanam upasaṅkamitvā*, having approached the Blessed One.

(iii) Verbs having the meaning of, *to choose, to name, to call, to appoint, to ask, to make, to know, to consider, etc.*, take *two* Accusatives, one a direct object and the other a factitive or indirect object : *puriso bhāram gāmaṁ vahati*, the man carries the load to the village; *purisaṁ gacchantam paśyati*, to see the man going; here *gāmaṁ* and *gacchantam* are the factitive objects.

(iv) Causative Verbs likewise govern two Accusatives : *puriso purisaṁ gāmaṁ gamayati*, the man causes the man to go to the village; *ācariyo siṣṣaṁ dhammaṁ pāṭheti*, the preceptor causes the disciple to read the Doctrine.

*Remark.* In such examples the Instrumentive may be used instead of the *factitive* object : *sāmiko dāsaṁ* (or *dāsaṁ*) *khajjaṁ khādāpeti*, the master causes the slave to eat the food; *purisena* (or *purisaṁ*) *kammaṁ kāreti*, he causes the slave to do the work.

(v) When the roots; *vas*, to live; *thā*, to stand; *si*, to lie down; *pad* to go, step : and *vis*, to enter, are preceded by the verbal prefixes *anu*, *upa*, *abhi*, *adhi*, *ā* and *ni*, they govern the Acc. *gāmaṁ upavasati*, he lives near the village : *nagaram adhivasanti*, they dwell in the village; *mañcam abhinisīdeyya*, he ought to sit on the cot; *Sakkassa saṅkhyatam upapajjati*, got into companionship with Cakra = he went to Cakra's heaven.

(vi) The Acc. is used for the Loc. : *nadiṃ pīvaṭi* = *nadiyaṃ pīvaṭi*, he drinks in the river; *gāmaṃ carati* = *gāme carati*, he roams in the village.

(vii) The indeclinables : *abhiṭṭa*, near, in the presence of, on both sides; *dhi, dhī*, Woe ! Fie ! Shame ! as well as the expression : *dhi-ratthū*, Woe, shame be to ! *antarā*, between, on the way ; *parito*, around, everywhere, on every side ; *anu*, by the side of, inferior ; *paṭi*, to, towards, for, near ; *pari*, around ; *upa*, inferior to ; *antarena*, except, without ; *abhi*, before, govern the Accusative : *abhiṭṭo gāmaṃ vasati*, he lives near the village ; *dhi brāhmaṇassa haṇṭāraṃ*, woe to him who strikes a brahmin ! *dhi-ratthū maṃ pūṭikāyaṃ*, shame on that foul body of mine ! *upāyaṃ antarena*, without expedient ; *maṃ antarena*, excepting me ; *antarā ca rājagahaṃ* and on the way to Rājagaha ; *parito nagaraṃ*, around the village ; *sādhū Devadatto mātaraṃ anu*, Devadatta is kind to his mother ; *anu Sāributtaṃ*, inferior to Sāriputta ; *pabbattaṃ anu*, by the side of the mountain ; *sādhū Devadatto mātaram paṭi*, Devadatta is kind to his mother ; *nadiṃ Nerañjaraṃ paṭi*, near the river Nerañjara ; *upa Sāriputtaṃ*, inferior to Sāriputta.

(viii) Duration of time is put in the Acc. : *divasaṃ*, the whole day ; *taṃ khaṇaṃ*, at that moment ; *ekaṃ samayaṃ*, once upon a time.

(ix) Ordinals in the Acc., denote "number of times" : *dutiyam*, for the second time ; *latiyam* for the 3rd time.

(x) Distance is also expressed by the Acc. : *yojanaṃ gacchati*, he goes one league.

(xi) The Acc. is very often used adverbially : *khīppam gacchati*, he goes quickly ; *hatthanillehakam bhuñjati*, he eats "licking his hands."

Remark. This is called the adverbial accusative.

599.

#### 5. THE INSTRUMENTIVE.

(i) The agent by whom or the instrument with which an action is performed is put in the Inst. : *cakkhunā rupam passati*, (one) sees forms with the eye ; *hatthena kammam karoti*, (one) does work with the hands ; *dāsena kato*, done by the slave.

(ii) The Inst. shows cause or reason ; *rukkho vātena oṇamati*, the tree bends down on account of the wind ; *kammunā vasalo hoti*, he is a pariah by reason of his work.

The Inst. can therefore be translated by such expressions as : *by means of* ; *on account of* ; *through* ; *by reason of* ; *owing to*.

(iii) The conveyance in or on which one goes is put in the Inst. : *yānena gacchati*, he goes in a cart ; *vimānena gacchimsu*, they went in a flying mansion ; *hatthinā upasaṅkamati*, he approached on his elephant.

(iv) The price at which a thing is bought or sold is put in the Inst. : *kaḥāpaṇenā no deṭṭha*, give it to us for a kaḥāpaṇa (a small piece of money) ; *satasahassena kiñitvā*, having bought it for 100,000 (pieces of money)

(v) The direction of route, or the way by which one goes is shown by the Inst. : *tā sāladvārena gacchanti*, they went by the gate of the hall ; *kena maggena so gato*, (by) which way did he go ?

(vi) It is used to denote infirmity or bodily defects, the member or organ affected being in the Inst. : *akkhīnā so kāṇo* he is blind of one eye ; *hatthena kuṇi* having a crooked hand.

(vii) Words expressing, birth, lineage, origin nature, are put in the Inst. : *jātiyā khattiyo Buddhō* Buddha is a kṣatriya by birth : *pakatiyā bhaddako*, good by nature.

(viii) The Inst. expresses the time in which : *divasena paṭṭo*, arrived in one day ; *ekena māsenā naga raṁ gacchi*, he went to the city in a month.

(ix) Also the time at which : *tena samayena*, at that time....

(x) It expresses companionship, and is then generally used with the indeclinables *saha* or *saddhim*, with, together with : *nisīdi Bhagavā saddhim bhikk-saṅghena*, the Blessen One sat together with the assembly of the monks.

(xi) The expressions "what is the use of," "what use to...." "what benefit by....," etc., are expressed in Pāli by the Inst. of the thing and the Dat. of the person : *kin te jatāhi dummeha*, what good to thee, O fool, by matted hair ? *kin nu me Buddhena*, what need have I of Buddha ? = what do I care for a Buddha ?

(xii) The word *attho*, desire, need, want, takes an Inst. of the object desired or wanted and a Dat. of the person : *maṇinā me attho*, I want a jewel (*lit.*, to me is need of, or desire for, a jewel).

(xiii) *Alaṁ*, enough, governs also this case : *alaṁ idha vāsenā* enough of living here : *alaṁ Buddhena*, Bud. is sufficient for me.

(xiv) Words denoting "separation" are generally construed with the Inst. *piyehi vippayogo dukkho*, separation from those we love is painful.

(xv) The indeclinables *saha*, *saddhim*, *samaṁ*, with, at : *vinā*, without, except, govern the Inst. *vinā-dosena*, without fault.

*Remark.* Saha, sometimes expresses "equality": *puttēna saha dhanavā pitā*, a father as rich as his son.

(xvi) Verbs meaning "to convey, to carry, to fetch" etc., take the Inst. of the *place* of carrying: *sisenā dārūkalāpam ucchaṅgena paṇṇam ādāya*, taking a bunch of firewood on her head and greens at her hips....

(xvii) The Inst. is often used adverbially (see above).

(xviii) It is also governed by many prepositions

600.

#### 6 THE ABLATIVE.

(i) The primary meaning of the Ablative is that expressed by the word "from;" that is, it expresses separation, it expresses also many other relations, in which the principal idea of separation is more or less discernible.

(ii) Separation: *gāmā apenti*, they left the village; *so assā patati*, he fell from the horse.

(iii) Direction from: *Avicīto upari*, above the Avicī Hell; *uddham pādātala*, (from) above the sole of the foot.

(iv) The place "wherein" an action is performed is put in the Abl.; in such cases a gerund is sometimes understood according to native grammarians, but the student will remark that these expressions have their exact parallel in English: *pāsādā oloketi*, he looks from the palace, is said to be equivalent to: *pāsādā abhirūhitvā pāsādā oloketi*—having ascended the palace he looks from the palace.

(v) Measure of length, breadth or distance is put in the Abl.: *dīghaso navavidatthiyo*, nine spans long; *yojanam āyāmato*, a league in length; *yojanam vitthārato*, a league in breadth.

*Remark.* In these examples the Inst. may also be used: *yojanaṃ āyāmena, yojanaṃ vitthārena.*

(vi) That from which a person or animal is ward-  
ed or kept off is put in the Abl. : *yavehi gāvo rakkhati,*  
he keeps off the cows from the barley : *taṇḍulā kāke*  
*vārehi* he wards off the crows from the rice.

(vii) With verbs meaning to "hide, conceal," the  
person from whom one wishes to hide is in the Abl. :  
*upajjhāyā antaradhāyati sissō,* the pupil hides himself  
from his preceptor. .

*Remark.* In such expressions, the Gen. may also be  
used : *antaradhāyissāmi samaṇassa Gotamassa,* I will  
hide myself from the samaṇa Gotama.

(viii) When the verb "antaradhāyati" means, to  
vanish, to disappear, the place from which one va-  
nishes is put in the Loc. : *Jetavane antaradhāyitvā,*  
having disappeared from the Jetavana monastery.

(ix) But when "natural phenomena" are re-  
ferred to, the Nom. is used : *andhakāro antaradhāyati,*  
darkness disappears.

(x) Verbs meaning "to avoid, to abstain, to re-  
lease, to fear, abhor" also govern the Abl. : *pāpa-*  
*dhammato viramati,* he refrains from sin; *so parimuc-*  
*cati jātiyā,* he is released from existence : *corehi bhā-*  
*yāmi,* I am afraid of thieves.

(xi) The Abl. also shews "motive, cause, reason"  
and can be translated by *for, on account of, by reason*  
*of, through* etc., *vācāya marati,* he died on account of  
his speech : *sīlato naṃ paśaṃsanti,* they praise him for  
his virtue.

*Remark.* In these examples, the Inst. may be used  
as well : *sīlena paśaṃsanti.*

(xii) It is used with words showing "proximity :"  
*gāmā samīpaṃ*, near the village.

*Remark.* In these examples, the Gen. may be used.

(xiii) Verbs meaning "to be born, to originate from" etc., govern the Abl. : *corā jāyati bhayaṃ*, from a thief fear arises.

(xiv) The following indeclinables govern the Abl. : *ārakū*, far from, after—*ārakū tehi Bhagavā*, far from them is the Blessed One : *upari*, above, over—*upari pabbatā*, over the mountain. So : *pati*, against, instead, in return ; *rite*, except, without ; *aññatra*, *vinā*, without, except ; *nānā* different, away from ; *puṭhu*, and, before a vowel, *puṭhag*, separately, without, except ; *ā*, till, as far as ; *yāva*, till, as far as ; *saha*, with ; *Buddhasmā pati Sāriputto*, Sar. takes the place of ; *Bud. : rite saddhammā*, without the true Doctrine : etc.

(xv) It should be noted that the Abl. is very frequently used, instead of the Instrumentive, the Accusative, the Genitive and the Locative. For instance : *vināsaddhammā* or *vinā saddhammaṃ*, or *vinā saddhammena*.

601.

## 7. THE LOCATIVE.

(i) The Locative shews the place *in* or *on* which a thing or person is, or an action is performed ; it is therefore expressed in English by "in, on, upon, at," *kaṭe nisīdati puriso*, the man is sitting on the mat ; *thaliyaṃ odanaṃ pacati* ; he cooks the food in a cooking-pot.

(ii) The Loc. shews the "cause, reason or motive" of an action : *dīpā cammesu haññante*, the panther is killed for its skin ; *kuñjaro dantesu haññate*, the elephant is killed for his tusks.

(iii) If denotes the time *when* an action takes place : *sāyanhasamaye āgato*, he came in the evening.

(iv) When the pre-eminence of an individual (thing or person) over the whole class to which he belongs, is implied, as well as with adjectives in the Superlative degree, the noun with respect to which such pre-eminence or such superlative degree of excellence is shewn is put in the Loc. or in the Gen. : *manussesu khattiyo sūratamo*, the kṣatriya is the most valiant of men, or *manussānaṃ khattiyo sūratamo* ; *kaṇhā gāvīsu saṃpannakkhīratamā*, of cows, the black one abounds most in milk, or, *kaṇhā gāvīnaṃ saṃpannakkhīratamā*.

(v) The following words govern the Locative and the Genitive as well, *sāmī*, master, owner ; *issaro*, king, lord ; *adhipati*, chief, lord ; *dāyādo*, an heir, *palibhū*, substitute, surety ; *paṣūto*, offspring, child ; *kusalo*, clever, expert : *gonesu sāmī*, an owner of oxen, or *gonānaṃ sāmī* ; etc.

(vi) Words signifying "to be happy, contented, eager" govern the Loc. as well as the Inst. : *ñāṇasmim ussuko*, eager for wisdom, or *ñāṇena ussuko* ; *ñāṇasmim paṣīdīto*, contented with wisdom, *ñāṇena paṣīdīto*.

(vii) Words signifying "reverence, respect, love, delighting in, saluting, taking, seizing, striking, kissing, fond of, adoring," govern the Loc. : *pāpasmim ramati mano* the mind delights in evil ; *bhikkhūsu abhivādenti*, they salute the monks ; *pāde gahetvā paṇāse khipati*, took him by the feet and threw him in the precipice ; *purisaṃ sīse paharati*, struck the man on the head.

(viii) The Loc. is used sometimes to shew that one does not take any account of something or person : *rudantaṃsmim dāraṇe pabbaji*, he left the world in spite



of his son weeping; The Genitive also may be used : *rudantassa dūrakassa pabbajī*. (See Locative and Genitive Absolute).

(ix) The Loc. is employed to denote superiority or inferiority with the words "upa" and "adhi" respectively : *upa khāriyaṃ dono*, a doṇā is inferior to a khāri; *adhi Brahmadaṭṭe Pañcalā*, the Pancalas are under Brahmadaṭṭa's supremacy; *adhi devesu Buddhō*, the Buddha is above the gods.

(x) It is used to denote "proximity" : *nadiyaṃ sassam*, corn near the river; *tassa paṇṇasālāya halthi-maggo hoti*, near his leaf-bhut there is an elephant-track.

(xi) The Loc. is used *absolutely* with a *participle* in the same case as itself (see, Absolute Construction).

(xii) In lexicons, the Loc. is used to signify "in the sense of" *ru sodde* (the root) *ru*, is used in the sense of "making noise."

(xiii) Words denoting "fitness, suitability" govern the Loc. *tuṃhi na yuttam*, not fit for thee; the Gen. is used in the same sense : *lava na yuttam*.

(xiv) The Loc. is extensively used *instead* of other Cases, and the students must be prepared to meet the Loc. where very often he would expect to find some other case. Let him note that in *almost* all instances, the Case for which the Loc. stands may be and is, used.

(xv) The Loc. is used for the Gen. (see, above, v).

(xvi) It is used for the Inst. : *patteṣu piṇḍāya carānti*, they go about *with* bowls for their food.

(xvii) It is also used instead of the Dat. *saṅghe dinnam mahapphalaṃ*, offering *to* the Clergy are very meritorious.

(xviii) The Loc. is used for the Ablative: *kadalī-  
desu gaje rakkanti*, they keep off the elephants from  
the plantain-trees.

(xix) The Loc. is frequently used adverbially;  
*atthe*, formerly.

### 8. THE VOCATIVES.

602. The Vocative case does not require any ex-  
planations: it is used exactly as in English.

### 603. THE GENITIVE AND LOCATIVE ABSOLUTE.

(i) When a noun or a pronoun in the *Locative or  
Genitive* is used with a participle in the same case as  
itself, the construction is called *Locative Absolute* and  
*Genitive Absolute* respectively. The Locative Abso-  
lute construction is met with much more often than the  
Genitive absolute construction. There is also found,  
now and then, a *Nominative Absolute* construction but  
far less common than the other two.

(ii) The Locative, Genitive and (sometimes) the  
Nominative Absolute, may often be translated by  
"when, while, since and sometimes by "although:"  
*tesu vivadantesu Bodhisatta cintesi*, while they were  
disputing, the Future Buddha thought; *suriye atthaṅ-  
gate*, when the sun had set=after sunset; *gāvēsu  
duyhamānāsu gata*, he went when the cows were being  
milked; *asaniyā pi sise paṭantiyā*, although the thun-  
der bolt was falling on their head.

(iii) *Sati*, the Locative singular of *santo* Pres.  
Part. of the verb *atthi*, to be, besides having the above  
meanings, may also often be translated by "if,"  
"such being the case": *atthe sati*, if there be need;  
*evam sati*, such being the case; *payoge sati*, when there  
is occasion. With feminine words, *sati* is also used,  
although it should be *satiyā* (fem): *pucchāya sati*,

if the question be asked, *ruciya sali*, had he the desire, if he had the wish.

(iv) The Genitive Absolute is not quite so frequently used as the Loc. Absolute, although found often enough: *sākuṇikassa gumbato jālaṃ mocentass' eva*, even while the fowler was disengaging the net from the bush: *tesaṃ kilanlānaṃ yeva suriyatthaṅgalavelā jātā*, while even they were sporting, it became dusk.

(v) There is also mentioned a so-called Nominative Absolute\* *gacchanto Bhāradvājo so, addasā ajjhutaṃ isin*, Bhāradvāja having gone, he ... etc., *yāyamāno mahārāja addāsī tantarena ge*, as the king was going, he. . . ., etc.

*Remark.* The Gen. Absolute is frequently used to shew "disregard, contempt," it can then be translated by "in spite of, notwithstanding." For example see above (p. 313, viii).

#### 604. SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE.

(i) As has already been said, whenever an adjective is not in composition with another word, it must agree with the word it qualifies in number, gender and case.

(ii) Adjectives in the comparative degree require an Ablative; *sīlaṃ eva sutā seyyo*, virtue is better than learning.

(iii) Comparison is also expressed by an Abl. followed by an adjective in the positive degree: *mādhurā pāṭaliputtakehi abhirupā*, the people of Madhura are more handsome than those of Pāṭaliputta.

\*Niruttiḍḍipāṇī, p. 146.

(iv) It is also expressed by the indeclinable *varam*, better, with an Abl. : *taṭo varam*, better than that.

(v) When "the better of two" is to be expressed, a Gen. is used with the positive degree : *tumhākaṃ dvinnam ko bhaddako*, of you two who is the better?

(vi) Superlative adjectives are used with the Gen. or the Loc., for examples see above (Locative, iv, p. 313).

#### (vi) SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

605.

##### 1. Personal Pronouns.

(i) The personal pronouns are used much in the same way as in English, and do not call for particular remarks, except, perhaps, the enclitic forms of *aṃ* and *vaṃ* (289-b, c ; 290-c).

(ii) The enclitic forms of *aṃ* : *me* and *no*, and those of *vaṃ* : *le* and *vo*, are never used at the beginning of a sentence nor immediately before the particles *ca*, *vā* and *eva* ; *detu me*, let him give to me ; *tava vā me hotu*, be it thine or mine ; *kammaṃ no niṭṭhitaṃ*, our task is finished ; *ko te doso*, what is thy fault ? *kahaṃ vo rājā*, where is your king ?

(iii) With verbs, the personal pronouns are frequently understood, as the endings of the tenses clearly indicate also the person as : *gacchati* (he) goes = *so gacchati* ; *gaccheyyāmi*, (I) should go = *aṃ gaccheyyāmi*, etc.

(iv) The personal pronoun *so*, *sā*, *taṃ* is also used as a demonstrative and as an article. See Concord (589). Therefore, *so puriso* may mean, according to the context, the man, or, that man.

(v) *Tasmā* (Abl.), is used adverbially in the sense of "therefore, accordingly, thereby": with the same meanings it is also followed by *hi* and *ti ha* (+*iti ha*): *taṣmā hi paññā ca dhanena seyyo*, and therefore is wisdom better than riches; *taṣmā ti ha bhikkhave*, accordingly, O! monks.

(vi) The Inst. *tena* is used with the same meanings as *tasmā*: *tena taṃ madhuraṃ*, therefore, on that account, it is sweet. *Tena* followed by *hi* means "well! very well! all right! well then!" *tena hi khādāpessāmi nan ti*, very well, then, I'll make you devour him.

(vii) *Naṃ* and *enaṃ* (295, 300), are used when something or some one already mentioned is referred to. See (296).

#### 606. 2. Demonstrative Pronouns.

(i) *Eso*, *esā*, *etaṃ* (298), refer to what is near, and mean: this, *esā itthī*, this woman; *nirupakāro esa*, this (fellow) is useless.

The same remarks apply to *ayaṃ* and *asu*, this.

Remark. *Esa* is often used for *eso*, *sa* for *so*.

(ii) The neuter *etad* (= *etaṃ*, 302), is used with the verb *hoti* and the Gen. of the person, and the expression is then equivalent to "to think": *tassa etad ahoṣi*, he thought.... (*lit*=of his this was).

#### 607. 3. The Relative.

(i) We have already explained the Relative (592); only a few of its most important peculiar uses need be mentioned here:

(ii) *yo* (311) is used with the Indefinite *Koci* (319): *Yo koci*, whoever, anyone; *yaṃ kiñci*, whatsoever, anything. See (314-a, b).

(iii) The neut. sing. *yam* is frequently used adverbially in the sense of "as, that, because, since, seeing that, if, when;" *taṃ bahum yam pi jīvāsi*, it is much *that* thou livest.

(iv) The Inst. *yena* is used as an adverb, meaning "whereby, by which, for which, because": *yena naṃ gaṇhissāmi*, by which I shall catch him.

(v) When motion to a definite place is expressed *yena*, where, is used with *tena*, there: *yena Bhagavā, ten' upasaṅkati*, he went to Buddha (*lit.* = where was Buddha there he approached).

(vi) *yasmā* (Abl.) is used in the sense of "because" and is then generally followed by *tasmā*, therefore; *yasmā tvaṃ na jānāsi tasmā bālo sī ti*, because thou doth not understand, therefore art thou a fool.

608.

#### 4. The Interrogative.

(i) The interrogative pronoun *ko* (316), may be used by itself or with a noun or pronoun: *ko pana tvaṃ*, who art thou? *ke ete*, who are these? *kā dārikā*, which girl?

(ii) *Kena* (Inst.) used with *attho* and the Dat. of the person, forms such expressions as "what do you want"? etc.: *kena te attho*, what are you in need of?

(iii) *Kena* (Inst.) *kasmā* (Abl.) and *kissa* (Gen.) are used adverbially with the meaning of "why? wherefore?"

(iv) *Kiṃ* is much used with the Inst. to express "what is the use of!": *kiṃ me jīvitena*, what is the use to me of life?

#### 5. The Indefinite.

609. The indefinite pronoun (319) does not present any peculiarity: *mā idha koci pāvāsi*, let nobody enter here; *kiñci bhayaṃ*, any danger.

## (VII) REPETITION.

610. To express "plurality, totality, distribution, variety, multiplicity, etc., words are sometimes repeated: *tesu tesu thānesu*, in various places; *taṃ taṃ kathayamānā*, saying this and this. *Yo*, thus repeated means "whoever, whatever whichever": *yaṃ yaṃ gāmaṃ*, whatever village; *itarā ten' eva niyāmena yā yā kiñci katheti tassa tassa upari kacavaram chaddesi*, and in this way the other (women) threw the refuse on whomsoever said anything; *so dīlhadīlhamanusse jīvitakkhayaṃ pāpeti*, he kills all whom he sees; *ga-tagalaṭṭhāne*, in every place; *yena kena*, by whatever ....; *ubbāhīyati so so*, every one is put to flight.

611.

## (VII) SYNTAX OF VERBS.

(i) The Concord of the verb with its subject has already been noticed (590, 1st).

(ii) The Present Tense denotes an action taking place now, a fact existing at the present time: *so bhāyati*, he is afraid; *sā pacati*, she cooks.

(iii) The Present Tense often expresses the continuance of an action and is equivalent to the present progressive: *sā gabbhe nisīdati*, she is sitting in her private room.

(iv) Habit, custom and general truth, are expressed by the Present Tense: *sabbe maranti*, all (men) die; *bhikkhu sīlaṃ ācarati*, a monk practises virtue.

(v) The present is sometimes used with a future signification: *Kim karomi*, what shall I do?

(vi) The present is extremely frequent in narrations when recounting past events as if they were actually happening, this is called the *Historical Present*; *so pañcamāṇavakasatāni siṃhaṃ ugganḥāpeti*, he taught five hundred young men (*lit.*, he teaches, etc.)

(vii) When no interrogative particle is used interrogation is sometimes expressed by placing the present tense at the beginning of the sentence: *socasi tvaṃ upāsaka*, grievest thou, O layman?

*Remark.* Other tenses may also be used in the same way to mark interrogation.

612.

## THE PAST TENSE.

*Perfect, Imperfect and Aorist.*

(i) The Perfect and the Imperfect tenses present no difficulty, they are as a rule used in the sense of a *general past*, and they do not require any notice. Let it be borne in mind, however, that the perfect is but seldom used; that the Imperfect, though more frequent than the Perfect, does seldom differ from it in meaning, and last, that the Aorist has generally displaced these two tenses and superseded them.

(ii) The Aorist is the principal past tense in Pāli and is therefore extensively used; it expresses indefinite past time, but also includes the present day. The Aorist may be translated by the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite (See 405): *catuppādā pi ekaṃ sīhaṃ rājānaṃ akaṃsu*, the quadrupeds made a lion king: *mukhe pahari*, struck him on the mouth; *kena kāraṇena rodi*, why did you cry? *brāhmaṇo eḷakena saddhiṃ vicari*, the brahmin walked about with the goat.

(iii) The indeclinable *mā* is used with the Aorist to express prohibition: *elaka, mā bhāyi*, O! goat, fear not? *mā puna everūpaṃ akāsi*, do not do so again; *tāta, mā gami*, dear son, do not go.

613.

## FUTURE TENSE.

(i) The Future expresses simple futurity: *ahaṃ gacchāmi*, I shall go; *te marissantī*, they will die.



(ii) The future is also used as a mild form of the Imperative, when courteously giving a command : *tvam tassa bandhanam dantehi khādissasi*, cut his bonds with thy teeth.

(iii) The future is used to express simple condition, with the particles *ce*, *sace* and *yadi* : *yadi tvam yā-guṃ pacissasi ahaṃ pivissāmi*, if thou wilt cook the gruel, I shall drink it; *so tañ ce labhissati, tena saddhiṃ gaccha*, if he get it, go with him.

(iv) *Bhavissati*, the 3rd, pers. sing. of *bhavati*, to be, is often used in the sense of "it must be that....": *corā paṭhamam ūeva bherisaddoṃ sutvā issarabheri bhavissati ti palāyitvā*, the thieves on first hearing the beating of the drum, (said) 'It must be the drum of an official' and fled; *ayaṃ me putto bhavissati*, he must be my son.

(v) *bavissati* preceded by the negative particle *na*, may be translated by "it cannot be": *nāyaṃ issara-bheri bhavissati* this cannot be an official's drum.

(vi) *Jānissāmi*, the 3rd. pers. sing. of *jānāti*, to know, is often used idiomatically in the sense of "I'll see": *hotu, pacchā jānissāmi*, let it be, I'll see (to it) afterwards.

## 614

## THE OPTATIVE.

(i) The Optative expresses "probability, capability, fitness, assent or permission, command, wish, condition" and is also used in laying down rules and precepts.

(ii) Fitness : *tvam tattha gaccheyyāsi*, you should go there.

(iii) Wish : *ahaṃ imaṃ tunhākam bhājetvā da-deyyam*, I would divide and give it to you, but....

(iv) Command : *tvam̐ pana ito paṭṭhāya ovādanusāsanīyaṃ dadeyyāsi*, but thou henceforward give us instructions and admonitions; *udarena nipajjeyyāsi*, lie on thy belly.

(v) Probability : *api ca nāma gaccheyyāmi*, I may go.

(vi) When expressing condition, it is usually preceded by "ce, sace or yadi," : *sāmi, sace imāya velāya tava sapattam̐ passeyyāsi, kin ti tam̐ kareyyāsi?* lord, if, at this time, thou shouldst see thy enemy, what wouldst thou do to him?

(vii) To express supposition, the word *yathā* is sometimes used with the Optative : *yathā mahārāja kocid eva puriso padīpaṃ padīpeyya.....*, were, mahārāja, a man to light a lamp....

(viii) Assent : *tvam̐ idāni gaccheyyāsi*, thou mayest now go.

#### THE CONDITIONAL.

615. The Conditional expresses an action unable to be performed on account of some impediment in the way of its execution : *so ce tam̐ yānaṃ alabhissa agacchissā*, he would go if he could get that vehicle; *bho satthavāsino, sace esa rukkamūle caṅkamanatāpaso ajja nābhavissā, sabbe māhaviḷopaṃ pattā abhavissatha*, O! merchants, had not to-day this ascetic been walking to and fro at the foot of this tree, you should all have been completely pillaged.

#### 616. THE IMPERATIVE.

(i) The Imperative is used in giving commands : *tena hi, gaccha*, very well, go!

(ii) It expresses entreaty : *Bhante Bhagavā apposukko viharatu*, Lord, let the Blessed One now live free from cares.

(iii) Benedictions, blessings: *vassasutam jīva*, may you live a hundred years!

(iv) With *mā* prefixed, the Imperative 2nd person expresses simple prohibition (*cf.* Aorist 612, iii) *mā evaṃ karotha*, do not do so!

(v) The Imperative 3rd person sing. of *bhavati*, to be, is often used idiomatically, with the meaning of "very well": *hotu, ahaṃ jānissāmi*, very well, I'll see (to it).

617.

## THE INFINITIVE.

(i) The Infinitive shews "purpose, motive, intention" It is used *actively* as well as *passively*. *Uyyāna-pālo chaḍḍetum upāyaṃ na passati*, the gardener saw no means of throwing (them) away: *taṃ gantum na dassāmi*, I will not let him go.

(ii) The infinitive is used with verbs meaning "to wish to try or strive, to begin, to be able": *sā roditum ārabhi*, she began to cry; *na koci mayā soddhiṃ salla-pitum sakkoti*, no one can converse with me; *sā pavisitum na icchati*, she did not wish to enter; *so taṃ ukkhipitum ussahati*, he endeavoured to lift it.

(iii) The verb *dadāti*, to give, after an Inf. means "to let, to allow" and the verb *labhati*, to obtain, means "to be allowed": *taṃ paharitum na dassāmi*, I will not allow him to be struck; *gehabhi nikkhamitum alabhanto*, not being allowed to go out of the house....

(iv) Verbs like *vaṭṭati*, to behave, to be fit, proper, and adjectives like *yutto*, having the same meaning, are much used with the Inf.; in the case of *vaṭṭati*, the Instrumentive is used of the person who ought to do the act: *ettha dāni mayā vasitum vaṭṭati*, it now behoves me to live here; it is used also impersonally: *taṃ*

*ñantum vaṭṭati*, the best is to kill him = it is proper, fit, to kill him. *Evam kathitum na yuttam*, it is not proper to speak thus.

(v) The indeclinables *labbhā*, possible, allowable, and *sakkā*, possible, able, are used with the Inf. : *sakkā* is used much in the same way as *vaṭṭati*, that is, actively or passively, and often with the Inst. of the person; the verb *hoti* frequently follows *sakkā* : *sakkā hoti methunam dhammam patisevitum*, it is possible to practise fornication; *etasmim thāne na sakkā vasiṭum*, it is impossible to live in this place; *idam na labbhā evam kātum*, it is not possible to do it in this way.

(vi) When *kāmo*, wishing, desirous, is compounded with an Inf., final *m* of the Inf. is dropped : *devatāya balikammaṃ kāretukāmo*, wishing to make an offering to the god.

## 618.

## THE GERUND.

(i) The Gerund always denotes an action completed *before* another; it may be translated by the word "having" followed by a past participle as : *gantvā*, having gone; or by the past tense followed by the conjunction "and" : *gantvā*, he went and....., the gerund, therefore, being very extensively used, is the most common connective in Pāli, and practically does away with the Pāli conjunction equivalent to the English "and" connecting two sentences. So *taṃ ukkhipitvā gharāṃ netvā catudhā vibhajitvā dānādāni puññāni katvā yathākammaṃ gato*, he lifted it up, took it home, divided into four parts and, practising alms-giving and other good deeds, went according to his deeds.

(ii) The word *va* (=eva) following a gerund, may be translated by "as soon as": *taṃ vacanaṃ sutvā, va* as soon as he heard these words.....; *so vānaro, attano puttāṃ disvā va*, the monkey, as soon as he saw his offspring.....

(iii) The particle "*api*" coming after a gerund, may be translated by "although": *akataññū puggalo cakkavāṭṭirajjāṃ datvā pi tosetuṃ na sakkā*, an ungrateful man cannot be satisfied although he be given universal sovereignty.

(iv) Before a gerund, *a* may be translated by "without": *papañcaṃ akatvā*, without making delay = without any delay; *ekaṃ pi akīlametvā*, without harming even one person.

(v) Some gerunds are used prepositionally; the principal of them are: *paṭṭhāya*, since, beginning from, from, after; *sandhāya*, with reference to, concerning; *ārabhāya*, concerning, with reference to; *sīñcicca*, intentionally; *asallakkhetvā*, inadvertently, unawares; *nissāya*, *upanissāya*, on account of, through, near; *ādāya*, with; *paṭicca*, by, through, on account of; *thapetvā*, except, excepting.

(vi) The Gerund may sometimes be translated by the present participle; *īdha āgantvā ahaṃ coraṃ paśsiṃ*, coming here I saw the thief.

(vii) The Gerund may have a passive signification: *corajettakena gahetvā*, having been seized by the robber chief.

#### THE PARTICIPLES.

619.

##### 1. The Present Participle.

(i) The Present Participle may generally be translated by "while, whilst," which sense is inherent in it; this participle always expresses contemporaneity of

action : *attano gāmaṃ gacchanto corāḷaviṃ paṭvā*, while going to his village he came upon a forest inhabited by thieves; *tattha gantvā mātaraṃ paṭijagganto vāsaṃ kappesi*, he went and, taking care of his mother, took up his abode there.

(ii) It must be remembered that participles are of the nature of adjectives (439) and must agree with the word they qualify in the same way as adjectives : *avīcinirayaṃ gacchantā sattā*.....persons going to the Avīci Hell; *āgacchantam taṃ disvā pi*, although he saw him coming.....

(iii) The Present Participle is sometimes used substantively, and may be translated by "he who" (does the action expressed by the verb) : *idaṃ paṇa paralokaṃ gacchantassa pātheyyaṃ bhaviṣṣati*, but this will be provisions for him who goes to the other world; *paralokaṃ gacchanto ekaṃ kaḥāpaṇam pi gaṇetvā na gacchati*, he who goes to the other world does not take even one farthing with him.

(iv) The Present Participle may also sometimes be translated by a conditional clause : *taṃ labhanto jīvissāmi alabhanto idh' eva marissāmi*, if I obtain her I shall live; if not, in this very spot shall I die; *addhamāse sahaṣsaṃ labhanto upatṭhahissāmi deva*, if I get a thousand every fortnight, I'll serve thee, Lord; *evam karonto lacchasi akaronto na lacchasi*, if you do so you'll get it, if not, you will not get it.

(v) The particle *pi* (=api) following a pres. part. may be rendered by "although" : *pitarā vāriyamāno pi*, although prevented by his father; *taṃ aṇassanto pi*, although not seeing him.

620

## 2. The Past Participles.

(i) There are two Past Participles, the Perfect Active (231, 465) and the Passive Perfect (450, ff).

(ii) The perfect active participle presents no difficulty whatever: *so sīhaṃ ādinnaṃ*, he having captured the lion; *bhattaṃ bhuttāvī*, having taken his meal.

(iii) The passive perfect participle is very often used as a predicate instead of a finite verb (see Concord of Subject and Predicate 590); it can then be translated by a past tense.

(iv) The P.P.P. of roots implying motion, and of transitive roots, takes an accusative; *sakanivāsaṃ eva gāto*, he went to his own place.

(v) When the P. P.P. is thus used predicatively, the verb "*hoti*," to be, is generally understood after it.

(vi) The agent of a P.P.P. is as a rule put in the Instrumentive case: *tayā puṭṭhaṃ puṭṭhaṃ*, by her the question was asked = she asked the question; *sāsaṇaṃ mayā likkhitaṃ*, a letter has been written by me = I have, etc.

(vii) Not seldom the P.P.P. may be translated by a pres. participle: *tato uppatito vījjullatā viya vījjotamāno paratīre atthāsi*, springing from there, he reached the other shore as a lightning flash.

621.

## 3. The Future Participle.

(i) The Future Participle (449) denotes that the agent is about to perform the action or undergo the state expressed by the root: *raṭṭhā raṭṭhaṃ vicarissam*, I am going (= I am about to go) from kingdom to kingdom; *taṃ ganthaṃ racissam ahaṃ*, I am about to compose that book.

(ii) It also shews purpose, intention, as may be seen by the 2nd example in (1) above.

(iii) It shews simple futurity : *nāhaṃ puna upesam gabbhaseyyaṃ* : I shall not be reborn again.

#### 622. 4. The Future Passive Participle.

(i) The Future Passive Participle conveys the idea of "fitness, necessity, obligation ;" it denotes that what is expressed by the root *is to be*, or *ought to be*, or *is fit to be* or *must be* done or undergone : *mayā kattabbaṃ kammaṃ niṭṭhitaṃ*, the work which was to be done by me is finished ; *sace so deso uklāṇo hoti so deso sammajjitabbo*, if the place be dirty it ought to be swept ; *na navā bhikkhū āsanena paṭibāhetabbā*, young monks should not be ousted from their seat.

(ii) From the above examples, it will be seen that the F.P.P. must agree with the subject in gender, case and number.

(iii) It is much used impersonally : *kinnu kattabbaṃ*, what is to be done ? *ettha ca imāni suttāni dassetabbāni*, and in this connection, these passages (from the Scriptures) should be pointed out : *iminā nayena veditabbo*, it must be understood in this way.

(iv) It will be, from the above examples, remarked, that the *agent* is put in the *Instrumentive*.

(v) *Bhavitabbaṃ*, used with the Inst. of the thing or person, is frequently used in the sense of "it must be that, one should or ought to" : *majjhatten' eva bhavitabbaṃ*, one should be indifferent to..., *visaya-jitāya etāya bhavitabbaṃ*, this must have been mixed with poison.



623.

## (ix) SYNTAX OF INDECLINABLES.

(i) The following are used correlatively :—

*yathā*, as....*tathā*, so; *yāva*, so long....*tāva*, that long=as long as; *yadā*, when....*tadā*, then; *yattha*, where....*tattha*, there.

(ii) *ca*....*ca*...., both....and, so *ca ahañ ca*, both he and I.

*vā*....*vā* ...,whether....or: *bhāsati vā karoti vā*, whether he speaks or acts.

*pi*....*pi*...., both.. and: *siñcati pi siñcāpeti pi*, both sprinkles and causes to sprinkle.

(iii) *ca*...*ca*...., and *vā*....*vā*....when in a negative sentence, are equivalent to : neither....nor.

(iv) *ca* and *vā* used singly, never come at the beginning of a sentence.

(v) *eva*, and, before a vowel *yeva*, is used to emphasize the idea expressed by a word, and maybe translated by "very, just, quite, exactly, as soon as" : *idāñi eva*, just now; *attano yeva*, one's very own. *Yeva* coming after a verb is not always easy to translate into English, but in the majority of cases, it may be rendered by "on, to go on, continue," etc. : *kathenti yeva*, they went on talking.

(v) *Yadi*, if, is used in conditional sentences with the Present, the Future, the Optative and the Conditional. *Yadi evaṃ, yajj' evaṃ*=if so, in that case; *vā....yadi vā....*=whether....or...., *gāme vā yadi v' āraññe*, whether in the village or in the forest.

**Remark** The syntax of the most important indeclinables has been given in "Syntax of Substantives."

624. *Direct and Indirect Narration.*

(i) The oblique construction in Pāli is expressed by placing the particle *iti*, so, thus, after the words in the *direct* construction as they would stand in English, that is, at the end of the words quoted: *kahaṃ so etarahi ti pucchi*, he asked "Where is he now?"

(ii) *Iti* is generally abbreviated to *ti*, and the last vowel of the quotation, if short, is lengthened before it: *sādhū ti*, he said "very well!"

(iii) Verbs of "saying, telling, asking, naming, knowing, thinking," are generally used with *iti*: those verbs may be:

(1) Placed *after* the particle *iti*: *Te "Sadhū" ti vatvā*, they said "Very well."

(2) *Before* the words quoted: *so pucchi "kiṃ jānāsi tvaṃ" ti*, he asked "What do you know?"

(3) The verb is frequently omitted altogether: "*māressāmi naṃ*" *ti*, (he thought, or said) "I'll kill him!"

(iv) When *iti* or *ti*, is followed by a vowel, sandhi takes place regularly: *iti + evaṃ = iccevaṃ*; *kvaci + iti = kvacīti*

(v) Often, *iti* has the sense of "because, with the intention of" shewing "cause, motive, intention, purpose:" "*jīvitum asakkontā*" *ti* because (we) are unable to make a living; "*makasaṃ paharissāmi*" *ti* *pitu malthakaṃ dvidhā bhindi*, intending to kill the mosquito he broke his father's head in two.

## 625 INTERROGATION AND NEGATION.

(1) The negative particle is *na*: *imaṣmiṃ sare udakaṃ n' atthi*, there is no water in this lake; *na*

*aññāsi*, didst not thou know? *seṭṭhinā saddhim kathe-tum na sakkomi*, I am unable to speak with the banker.

(ii) With an Optative, *na* is used in prohibition : *na hatthisālam gaccheyya*, let him not go to the elephant-shed.

(iii) *Na* may form the first part of a compound : *nāgamanam* (= *na* + *āgamanam*), non-arrival ; *nabhikkhu*, a non-priest = a layman.

(iv) Two negatives make an affirmative : *bherim na na vādeyyā*, not that he may not beat the drum (he may therefore beat it).

(v) *No* is also used in negation in the same way as *na* : *no jānāti*, he does not know.

(vi) *No* followed by *na* expresses a strong affirmative : *no na dhameyya*, he should surely blow (the conch); *no na ppahoti*, he is most certainly able.

(iii) Interrogation is expressed by using interrogative adverbs or pronouns as *kasmā*, why? wherefore? *kissa*, *kena*, why? *ko*, who? etc.

(iii) Also by means of interrogative particles.

(ix) *Api*, when used in interrogation, is always placed first in the sentence : *Ap' āvuso amhākam satthāram jānāsi*, do you, Sir, know our Teacher?

(x) followed by *nu kho*, it expresses a very emphatic interrogation : *Api nu kho koci upadda-ro hoti*, well, have you any cause of distress?

(xi) *Nu*, I wonder! Pray? *Nu*, is often followed by *kho* : *kīdiso nu kho paraloko*, I wonder what the next world is like? *corā nu atthi*, are there thieves?

(xii) Preceded by *na*, it expresses emphatic interrogation : *na nu 'ham yodho*, am I not a warrior?

(xiii) Interrogation is also expressed by placing the verb first in the sentence : *socasī upāsaku*, grievest thou, layman ?

(xiv) Sometimes the mere tone of voice is sufficient to express interrogation : *suṇaṃ labhi*, didst thou get broth ?

#### INTERJECTIONS.

(i) The principal interjections are : *hā*, alas ! ah ! *handā* ! come ! *aṅga* ! indeed ! oh ! *bho*, friend ! Sir ! I say ! *hare*, sirrah ! *āma*, yes ! truly ! indeed ! *aho*, alas ! oh ! (cf. p. 244.)

(ii) *Bhaṇe*, first pers. sing. Reflective, of *bhaṇati*, to say, is used as an interjection with the meaning of "to be sure ! I say, there !"

(iii) *Mañṇe*, 1st, pers. sing. Reflective of *mañṇati*, to think, is also used as an interjection in the sense of "methinks ! I dare say ! I suppose !"

### CHAPTER XV.

#### PROSODY.

626. Prosody is that part of Grammar which treats of the laws of versification.

A *gāthā*, in Pāli poetry, is a stanza.

A *pāda* is the fourth part of a stanza, called also "a quarter-verse."

A *vaṇṇa* is a syllable in a *pāda*.

A short syllable is termed *lahu*.

A long syllable is called *garu*.

A foot is termed *gaṇa*.

627. The mark  $\sim$  represents a short syllable, and the mark  $-$  a long syllable. A foot containing two long syllables is termed *gā*, that is, *ga + ga*, the initial syllable *ga* of the word *garu* being used to represent a

long syllable; a foot of two short syllables is termed *lā*, that is *la + la*, the initial syllable of the word *lahu* being employed to represent a short syllable.

628. The following are the four varieties of dis-syllabic foot:

Syllables.	Pāli.	English.
⏏   ⏏	<i>la la or lā.</i>	Pyrrhic.
—   —	<i>ga ga or gā.</i>	Spondee.
⏏   —	<i>la ga.</i>	Iambus.
—   ⏏	<i>ga la.</i>	Trochee.

629. The eight-syllable feet, known in Pāli as the *aṭṭhagaṇa* are as follows:

Syllables.	Pāli designation.	English designation.
—   —   —	<i>ma.</i>	Molossus.
⏏   ⏏   ⏏	<i>na.</i>	Tribrach.
—   ⏏   ⏏	<i>bha.</i>	Dactyl.
⏏   —   —	<i>ya.</i>	Bacchic.
⏏   —   ⏏	<i>ja.</i>	Amphibrach.
⏏   ⏏   —	<i>sa.</i>	Anapaest.
—   ⏏   —	<i>ra.</i>	Cretic.
—   —   ⏏	<i>ta.</i>	Antibacchic.

#### SHORT AND LONG SYLLABLES.

630. The short vowels in Pāli are *a*, *i*, *u*, the long vowels are *ā*, *ī*, *ū*, *e*, *o*. When *a*, *i* or *u* is followed by a double consonant, it is prosodically long. For ins-

nance, the first as well as the second *a* in *cakkañca* is long because followed by *kk* and *ñc* respectively. Before *niggahita* (*m̐*) a short vowel is also always prosodically long. Thus in *saccaṁ*, the *a* before *m̐* is long. In poetry, a naturally short vowel is occasionally lengthened and a naturally long one shortened to meet the exigencies of the metre. In order to make a short vowel long, the consonant following it is sometimes doubled.

## VARIETIES OF METERS.

631. There are three classes of metres, termed **Sama**, **Addhasama** and **Visama**. When the syllables in all the *pādas* are exactly alike, the metre is called **Sama**; when those in the first and third and those in the second and fourth *pādas* are alike, it is termed **Addhasama**; and when all the *pādas* or verses are different, the metre is termed **Visama**.

## 1. THE SAMA CLASS.

632. In *gāthas* of this class, the syllables in each *pāda* may range from six up to twenty-two. The names of the seventeen kinds of metre are as follows:

Gāyatti	— 6 syllables	Sakkarī	— 14 syllables.
Uṇhi	— 7 „	Atisakkarī	— 15 „
Anuttubham	— 8 „	Aṭṭhi	— 16 „
Brahati	— 9 „	Aṭṭhi	— 17 „
Panti	— 10 „	Dhuti	— 18 „
Tuttubham	— 11 „	Atidhuti	— 19 „
Jagati	— 12 „	Kati	— 20 „
Atijagati	— 13 „	Pakati	— 21 „

Akati—22 syllables.

633. These are again subdivided according to the kind of feet employed in each stanza; as the four *pādas* are similar, the scheme of only one *pāda* is given for each kind of metre:

1. **Gāyatti**, having Pādas of *six* syllables. There is one variety.

*Tanumajjhā* — — — | — — —

2. **Uñhi**, having Pādas of *seven* syllables. There is one variety :

*Kumāralatītā*, — — — | — — — | —

3. **Anutthubham**, having Pādas of *eight* syllables. There are five divisions :

(i) *Citrpadā*, — — — | — — — | — —

(ii) *Vijjummālā*, — — — | — — — | — —

(iii) *Mānavakam*, — — — | — — — | — —

(iv) *Sāmaṇikā*, — — — | — — — | — —

(v) *Pāmāṇikā*, — — — | — — — | — —

4. **Brahati**, having Pādas of *nine* syllables. There are two varieties :

(i) *Halāmukhī* — — — — — | — — —

(ii) *Bhujagāsusu* — — — | — — — | — — —

5. **Panti**, having Pādas of *ten* syllables. There are seven varieties :

(i) *Suddhavirājitaṃ*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(ii) *Paṇavo*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(iii) *Rummavati*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(iv) *Mattā*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(v) *Campākamālā* — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(vi) *Manoramā*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(vii) *Ubbhāsakaṃ*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

6. **Tutthubham**, having Pādas of *eleven* syllables. There are eleven varieties :

(i) *Upatthitā*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(ii) *Indavajirā*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —

(iii) *Upavajirā*, — — — | — — — | — — — | —





(xi) *Ujjalā*,      ◡◡◡ | ◡◡◡ | —◡◡ | —◡—

(xii) *Vessadevī*, ——— | ——— | ◡—— | ◡——

*Remark.* There are pauses after the fifth and twelfth syllables.

(xiii) *Tāmarasaṃ*.

◡◡◡ | ◡—◡ | ◡—— | ◡——

(xiv) *Kaṃālā*,      ◡◡— | ◡— — | ◡◡— | ◡——

8. **Atijagati**, having Pādas of thirteen syllables.  
There are two varieties :

(i) *Pahāsinī*,

——— | ◡◡◡ | ◡—— | —◡— | —

*Remark.* There are pauses after the third and thirteenth syllables.

(ii) *Rucirā*,

◡—— | —◡◡ | ◡—— | ◡—◡ | —

*N.B.*—There are pauses after the fourth and thirteenth syllables.

9. **Sakkari**, having Pādas of fourteen syllables.  
There are three varieties :

(i) *Aparājitā*,

◡◡◡ | ◡◡◡ | —◡— | ◡◡— | ◡——

*Remark.* There are pauses after seventh and fourteenth syllables.

(ii) *Pharaṇakalika*,

◡◡◡ | ◡◡◡ | —◡◡ | ◡◡◡ | ◡——

*Remark.* There are pauses after the seventh and fourteenth syllables.

(iii) *Vasāntatīlakā*,

——◡ | —◡◡ | ◡—— | ◡—— | ——

10. **Atisakkarī**, having Pādas of *fifteen* syllables  
There are four varieties :

(i) *Sasikalā*,

~~~~~|~~~~~|~~~~~|~~~~~|~~~~~|

(ii) *Maṇigūṇanikaro*,

~~~~~|~~~~~|~~~~~|~~~~~|~~~~~|

*Remark.* There are pauses after the eighth and  
fifteenth syllables.

(iii) *Malinī*,

~~~~~|~~~~~|·——|———|———|

*Remark.* There is a pause after the eighth syllable.

(iv) *Pabhaddakaṃ*,

~~~~~|———|———|———|———|

11. **Atthi**, having Pādas of *sixteen* syllables. There  
is one variety :

*Vāninī*,

~~~~~|~~~~~|———|———|———|

12. **Atyatthi**, having Pādas of *seventeen* syllables.  
There are three varieties :

(i) *Sikharinī*,

———|———|~~~~~|~~~~~|———|

*Remark.* There are pauses after the sixth and seven-  
teenth syllables.

(ii) *Harinī*,

~~~~~|~~~~~|———|———|~~~~~|

*Remark.* There are pauses after the sixth, tenth and  
seventeenth syllables.

(iii) *Mandakkantā*,

———|~~~~~|~~~~~|———|———|

*Remark.* There are pauses after the fourth, tenth  
and seventeenth syllables.

13. **Dhuti**, having Pādas of *eighteen* syllables.  
There is one variety :

*Kusumitalatāvellitā,*

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

14. **Atidhuti**, having Pādas of *nineteen* syllables.  
There are two varieties :

(i) *Meghavipphujjitā,*

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —  
— — — | — — —

*Remark.* There are pauses after sixth, thirteenth and nineteenth syllables.

(ii) *Saddūlavikkīlitī,*

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —  
— — — | — — —

*Remark.* There are pauses after the twelfth and nineteenth syllables.

15. **Kati**, having Pādas of *twenty* syllables. There is one variety.

*Vutta,*

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —  
— — — | — — —

16. **Pakati**, having Pādas of *twenty-one* syllables.  
There is one variety :

*Saddharā,*

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —  
— — — | — — —

17. **Akati**, having Pādas of *twenty-two* syllables.  
There is one variety :

*Bhaddaka,*

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —  
— — — | — — — | — — —

## 2. THE ADDHASAMA CLASS.

634. In the Addhasama class of metres, the first and the third, and the second and fourth pādas are similar. The following table shews eleven kinds of metres that come under this head :—

| Name of metre. | Odd quarter-<br>verses. | Even quarter-<br>verses. |
|----------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
|                | 1st—3rd.                | 2nd—4th.                 |
| Upacitta       | 00-00-00-0-             | -00-00-00--              |
| Ratamajjhā     | -00-00-00--             | 0000-00-00--             |
| Vegavatī       | 00-00-00--              | -00-00-00--              |
| Bhaddavirājam  | --00-0-0--              | ---00-0-0--              |
| Ketumatī       | 00-0-0-0--              | -00-0-000--              |
| Akhyānikā      | --0--00-0--             | 0-0--00-0--              |
| Viparītapubba  | 0-0--00-0--             | --0--00-0--              |
| Harīṇaplutā    | 00-00-00-0-             | 000-00-00-0-             |
| Aparavutta     | 000000-0-0-             | 0000-00-0-0-             |
| Pubbitaggā     | 000000-0-0-             | 0000-00-0-0-             |
| Yavādikāmatī   | 0-0-0-0-0-0-            | -0-0-0-0-0-0-            |

*Remark.* The *Aparavatta* corresponds to the *Vetāliya* explained, referred to lower down.

## 3. THE VISAMA CLASS.

635. The Pādas in this division of verses are all dissimilar. Under this head comes the metre known as

the **Vatta**, the heroic measure of Pāli literature, eight syllables being employed in each pāda, the first and last syllables therein being free, that this, a short or long syllable may be optionally used in those syllables. The syllables between the first and last, form two seats, having three syllables in each seat or foot. In the first seat in all the quarters, any foot may be employed except a *Tribrach* and an *Anapaest*, that is to say, three short syllables ( o o o ) or two short and one long ( o o — ) must not be used. In the second seat of the first and third quarters, **any** foot may be used, but in the second seat of the second and fourth quarters only **ya** (Bacchic) or **ja** (amphibrach) (i.e., o — — or o — o ) must be employed. It should be noted, however, that the **vatta proper** has **ja** in the *second* seat of both the second and the fourth pādas.

*Remark.* The sign o means, that the syllable may optionally be *short* or *long*.

636. (i) *Vatta proper.*

| Free.    |          | 1st seat.                  |  | 2nd seat.                  |  | Free.    |
|----------|----------|----------------------------|--|----------------------------|--|----------|
| 1st pāda | <u>o</u> | <u>o</u> <u>o</u> <u>o</u> |  | <u>o</u> <u>o</u> <u>o</u> |  | <u>o</u> |
| 2nd „    | <u>o</u> | <u>o</u> — <u>o</u> —      |  | <u>o</u> — <u>o</u>        |  | <u>o</u> |
| 3rd „    | <u>o</u> | <u>o</u> <u>o</u> <u>o</u> |  | <u>o</u> <u>o</u> <u>o</u> |  | <u>o</u> |
| 4th „    | <u>o</u> | <u>o</u> <u>o</u> <u>o</u> |  | <u>o</u> — <u>o</u>        |  | <u>o</u> |

637. Sometimes the Gāthā contains six Pādas — the fifth following the rule for the first and third; the sixth that for the second and fourth.



the even, that is, the second, fourth, and sixth feet any of the following, namely, **Ba, Ja, Sa, Gā**, or four short syllables may be employed, but **Ja** must not be used in the odd feet, that is, in the first, third and fifth. The sixth foot may be **Ja**, or four short syllables. The second half stanza must fulfil the same conditions. It is necessary to observe that in the *jāti* metre a foot consists of four syllabic instants, the time taken up in pronouncing a short syllable being taken as an instant of time; thus a long syllable being taken equal to two short ones, each foot used in the *Ariyā* is equal to four syllabic instants. The following is an illustration of an *Ariyā* stanza:—

|                        | 1st<br>Foot. | 2nd     | 3rd | 4th   | 5th | 6th   | 7th   | $\frac{1}{2}$<br>foot. |
|------------------------|--------------|---------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-------|------------------------|
| First half<br>stanza.  | - -          | o o o o | - - | o o - | - - | o - o | - o o | -                      |
| Second half<br>stanza. | o o -        | - -     | - - | - -   | - - | o     | - -   | -                      |

642. The *Vetāliya* is so formed that it usually consists of fourteen syllabic instants in the odd quarters and sixteen in the even, while the *Mattāsāmaka* consists of sixteen syllabic instants in each quarter. The metres of the *Jāti* class furnish many varieties, but it is not within the scope of this work to treat of them in detail. As, however, the *Vetāliya* is of rather frequent occurrence, we give below the scheme of it. Each *pāda* is divided into *three* seats; the 1st seat in the 1st and 3rd *pādas* must have six syllabic instants; the 1st seat of the 2nd and 4th *pādas* must contain *eight* syllabic instants; the 2nd seat must be a *Cretic* foot and the 3rd an *Iambic* foot:

## VETĀLĪYA.

|                           | 1st seat.                    | 2nd seat. | 3rd seat. |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| No. of syllabic instants. | —                            | Cretic.   | Iambus.   |
| 1st Pāda 6                | <i>six syllabic instants</i> | — ∪ —     | ∪ —       |
| 2nd „ 8                   | <i>eight „ „</i>             | — ∪ —     | ∪ —       |
| 3rd „ 6                   | <i>six „ „</i>               | — ∪ —     | ∪ —       |
| 4th „ 8                   | <i>eight „ „</i>             | — ∪ —     | ∪ —       |

*Remarks.* (a) The above is a perfect Vetāliya. In the 3rd seat, the following feet may be found instead of the Iambus :

- ∪ ∪      pyrrhic.  
 — —      spondee.  
 ∪ — —      bacchic.  
 ∪ — ∪      amphibrac.

(b) The sign of the long syllable (—) must be counted as 2, since it is equal to *two* short syllables.

FINIS.



Cal. N.C.  
N 28/10/76

Central Archaeological Library,  
NEW DELHI.

23454

Call No. 491.375/Dur.

Author—Dyvoiselle, Charles.

Title—A Practical Grammar  
of the Pali Language.

*"A book that is shut is but a block"*

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY  
GOVT. OF INDIA  
Department of Archaeology  
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book  
clean and moving.